

A New and Easy

Edw^r Bence
1607/5-265

METHOD

To understand the

Roman History.

WITH

An Exact Chronology of the Reign of the Emperors ; an Account of the most eminent Authors, when they flourished ; and an Abridgment of the *Roman* Antiquities and Customs.

By Way of DIALOGUE,
For the Use of the Duke of *Burgundy*.

Ita late per orbem terrarum arma circumtulit, ut qui res ejus legunt, non unius populi, sed generis humani, facta discant. Luc. Flor.

Done out of French, with very large Additions and Amendments, by Mr. Tho. Brown.

The NINTH EDITION Corrected.
Recommended as Useful for all Schools.

L O N D O N :

Printed for W. FEALLES, at Rowe's Head, against St. Clement's Church in the Strand ; R. WELLINGTON, at the Dolphin and Crown, Corner of Palsgrave Head Court, without Temple-Bar ; J. BRINDLEY, at the King's-Arms in New Bond-street ; C. CORBETT, at Addison's Head, against St. Dunstan's Church in Fleet street ; and B. WELLINGTON. 1736.

CONFIDENTIAL

CONFIDENTIAL

CONFIDENTIAL

CONFIDENTIAL

CONFIDENTIAL

CONFIDENTIAL




CONFIDENTIAL



T H E

Translator's P R E F A C E.

 *HERE are two popular Objections commonly made against Abridgments, which I shall endeavour to answer, one after the other: The first is, that they have occasion'd the Loss of the greater Volumes from whence they were extracted. Thus, for instance, the Loss of Trogus Pompeius is imputed to Justin; that of Livy to Florus, or his Epitomizer; and Xiphilinus, a Monk of Constantinople, who flourish'd about the middle of the eleventh Century, is charged with depriving the World of Dion Cassius; nay, the Loss of all the Texts and Decisions of the learned Lawyers before him is attributed to Trebonian, who compiled his Pandects out of them. This Notion was started by some learned Men of the last Age, as Bodin, Casaubon, and my Lord Bacon; and since their Time, merely, I suppose, upon their Credit and Authority, it has been almost universally received, without*

any manner of Examination. However, with a due Submission be it spoken to Persons of their deserved Esteem and Reputation in the World, I cannot persuade myself that this Accusation is well supported: for besides that we have the Misfortune to regret the want of several useful Books, which, as far as we know, were never abbreviated; such as Diodorus Siculus, and Dionysius Halicarnassæus; and, on the other hand, enjoy several others that were epitomiz'd; as we find the History of Herodotus is still extant, although one Theopompus, whom Suidas mentions, had made an Abridgment of it; both which Instances are sufficient to overthrow this precarious Hypothesis: yet, in my Opinion, there are so many better Reasons to be assigned for the Loss of those precious Monuments of Antiquity, that I am apt to flatter my self it will be no disagreeable Entertainment to the Reader to give him a short View of them.

Before the Art of Printing was discovered, it may easily be imagined, that as Volumes of any considerable Bulk were infinitely more expensive than now they are, so they could only be purchased by Men of plentiful Fortunes; that consequently they were nothing near so well diffused; and when they happen'd to be lost, or impair'd by Time, the Loss was neither so soon, nor so easily recruited. If to this we add, That in that Part of the World which had formerly been the Seat of all Arts and Sciences, Learning began to be neglected, if not despised; and that from another Part of it vast Inundations of barbarous People were continually pouring down, who swept away every thing before them; no considering Men, I believe, will find it strange, that amidst the vast

vast Treasures of the antient Ages so few should escape so general a Shipwreck, and arrive safe to our hands.

That this was the Case of the Roman Empire in its declining Period, no body that is not utterly unacquainted with their History will presume to question. As soon as that vigorous Spirit which animated their Republick had wholly abandon'd them, Learning and Learned Men made but a very inconsiderable Figure among them. Hence we see, that from the Time of the Antonines till Dioclesian, they did not produce one single Historian above the Rank of our modern Grub-street Annalists. I could not prevail with my self to allow the *Scriptores Augustæ Historiæ*, who lived in this Interval, a better Station; for though 'tis certain that sorry Guides are better than none at all, yet the Style of the abovemention'd Writers is so extremely vicious, their Conduct so injudicious, and their Relations of all Transactions so jejune and insipid, that any one that will submit to the Penance of turning over their Works, will soon be convinced to his Cost, that what I have told him is true.

While Learning was thus daily decaying in its Vitals, all this while Epitomes were given to keep it alive: Not that they contributed to the Loss of the greater Volumes, which would have been destroy'd without them; but they were the only Books that then pleased, and were in vogue: Whether it was that the sickly Genius of those Ages could not endure Volumes of a larger Size, which it required a more healthful Constitution to digest; or whether the continual Alarms of their Enemies just allow'd them Time enough to peruse short Manuals; as we see Men seldom sit down to a regular

lar Dinner, when they are every Moment in danger of having their Quarters beaten up. For now the Goths, under which Name I comprehend all the Northern Mob, made up of the Scum of several Nations, invaded the Empire in good earnest, and pierced into the very Bowels of it, which before they were contented to attack only in its Out-Skirts and remotest Provinces. This insolent Rabble of Tramon-tani passing the Alps, out of a natural Aversion to all Literature and Politeness, burnt and plunder'd all the Libraries that stood in their way ; and as no care was taken to repair the Damages which these outrageous Levellers every where committed, we ought not to wonder that when the Building was consumed, so much of the rich Furniture happen'd to share the same Calamity, and be destroy'd along with it.

The Saracens indeed, who some Ages after subdued the better Part of Asia and Greece, were a fairer Enemy ; as if their Design had been to make an entire Conquest of Sciences and Arts, rather than of Territories and People, they encouraged the Muses, which perhaps may be one Reason why more of the Greek Historians are preserved than of the Latin ; and translated Ptolemy, Euclid, and Aristotle, with most of the valuable Greek Books they could get, into the Arabick Language ; by the same Token that the last of these, about the End of the Twelfth Century, was out of Arabick turned into Latin, upon which barbarous Version the Schoolmen afterwards built all their Pettifogging, Litigious, Cobweb Divinity. But the Goths were not so merciful in their Anger, they destroy'd Learning Root and Branch, and by their Good-will would not have left us the least Remains or Footsteps of it. To this may be added,
as

as no small Cause of the Loss of so many Latin Originals, the indiscreet Zeal of some over-pious Christians, who never thought their Religion secure or out of danger, so long as any of the Monuments of Paganism were suffer'd to stare it in the Face ; for this Reason they sacrificed all those Books which gave the least Account of the Heathen Theology to the Flames : And as 'tis impossible for an Historian to give us a full History of any Country without acquainting us with several of their Religious Rites and Ceremonies, because Livy makes frequent mention of the Roman Sacrifices, Lustrations, Processions, &c. Gregory the Great destroyed as many of his Books as had the Misfortune to fall into his hands, and by doing so, imagined he did his Maker good Service. I could sooner forgive him, had he taken upon him the Title of Universal Bishop, which his ambitious Brother, Prelate of Constantinople, then usurped ; nay, had he done all the sinful, unrighteous Things which the worst of his Successors ever committed ; than pardon him this immortal Action of destroying the Works of Livy.

In short, for I am afraid I have dwelt too long upon this Chapter, 'tis evident that first a Neglect or Discouragement of Learning, then the everlasting Invasions of barbarous Nations really contributed to the Loss of those antient Authors whom now we want ; especially considering that the Transcribers of those Ages could not soon enough repair the Damages which these cruel Ravagers committed in the Empire of Learning : it being truly observed of the Roman Monarchy, and the Roman Authors, that their Greatness in part occasioned the Destruction of both.

So much for the first Objection, which I confess does not affect our Attempts, as being compiled not out of one single Historian, but collected out of many. The other, as it appears to be better grounded, so it is more general, and strikes at all Abbreviations whatever. It is therefore pretended, that these sort of Performances don't so much diffuse Learning, as they prostitute it; that as they were the Inventions of an unpolished Age, when People grew lazy, so they continue those Habits still in the Minds of Men; that the generality of Mankind contenting themselves with a superficial Knowledge of Things, sit down satisfied with these Amusements, which furnish them with Matter enough for common Conversation, and by this means are hinder'd from making a thorow Progress in Learning. To this terrible Charge it may be answer'd, that the ill Use these empty Pretenders make of Abridgments, as of every thing else, does not destroy the real Advantage of them, and ought by no means to stand in competition with the visible Benefit that the far greater Number of Readers daily reap from them. As there is no disputing against Matter of Fact, 'tis certain there were never so many Abstracts or Epitomes of all sorts printed as at present; witness the great Variety of Journals in all Parts of Europe: and yet the Common-wealth of Learning has been so far from receiving any Prejudice or Detriment from them, that it may without the least Imputation of Vanity be affirmed, that all Sciences have been more universally cultivated in our Age, than in any of the preceding ones; and that these Abbreviations have not a little contributed to the farther Increase and Propagation of them. History is a Province of a vast extent, where an unacquainted Traveller may easily lose his way, or else
be

be bewildred in the great Variety of Matter; and therefore it is but a charitable Office to give him a general Scheme of the Country before he actually visits it. 'Tis likewise plain, that Abridgments have been successfully attempted in Mathematicks. How intelligible are Tacquet, Barrow, and De Wit, in respect of Clavius's tedious Comments upon Euclid's Demonstrations? Nay, they have not only saved abundance of unnecessary Labour, but they have made this Knowledge pleasant to those who in the last Age were frighted with the Difficulty of these Studies. Before I dismiss this Paragraph I will only add, that Abridgments have been so far from mutilating any of the Branches of Learning, that were it not for the Assistances we derive from them there would be so many Interruptions and Chasmas, particularly in the Historical Part of it, that it would prove but an uncomfortable Study. How many Ecclesiastical Monuments, for instance, had been lost, if Photius, the learned Patriarch of Constantinople, had not preserved them for Posterity, by throwing them into a lesser Room?

I will not so far abuse my Reader's Patience, as to enlarge upon the several Advantages deduced from History, and particularly the Roman, which of all others is the most instructive and entertaining. As it comprizes a prodigious Variety of surprizing Events, the Affairs of other Nations are all along so interwoven with theirs, that what one of their own Writers said of them is literally true, viz. That whoever reads the Actions they performed, does not so much learn the History of one single People, as that of all Mankind. And certainly it is a prodigious Thing to consider, that a small

A 5

pitiful

pitiful Town, composed at first of Out-laws and Vagabonds, of different Interests, Tempers, and perhaps Principles, of so little Credit and Reputation, that their Neighbours refused to marry their Daughters to them, should surmount so many Difficulties which threatned their Constitution in its very Infancy; and afterwards, upon a new-moulding of their Government, which private Malecontents at home, and powerful Enemies abroad, laboured to destroy, should by the Regularity of their military Discipline, the Bravery of their Forces, and the Virtue of their Inhabitants, be in a Capacity to make such astonishing Conquests. And tho' the perpetual Struggles between the People and the Senate threw the State into so many terrible Convulsions, that by all appearing Symptoms, their Common-wealth often seemed to be in an expiring Condition, yet we find they made the haughtiest Powers in the Universe to truckle to them, and reduced all the then inhabited World to their Obedience. After this, to reflect how by the creeping in of Avarice and Luxury, and the several inferior Vices dependant on these, the Republick was dissoluea, and forced to give way to the Emperors, under whose Hands it flourish'd for some time, till by the frequent Revolutions made by an insolent Army, but especially by the perpetual Irruptions of the Northern People, it was by degrees broken to pieces; all these remarkable shiftings of the Scene, and the fresh Appearance of so many new Persons still upon the Theatre, must needs give a considering Man not only a very agreeable, but useful Entertainment.

I am now arrived to the last Stage of my Preface, so that I have no more Work left upon my hands, but only to give the Reader a short Account of

of the following Performance. It was compiled by a judicious Hand in France for the use of the Duke of Burgundy, and recommended to me by a learned Gentleman here in Town; who was so taken with the Newness of the Method, and the Exactness of the Chronology, that he was impatient till he saw it put into an English Dress. The whole is managed by way of Question and Answer, in an easy, familiar, intelligible Method, suited to Persons of the meanest Capacity, but with that good Order and Accuracy, that the greatest Proficients in this sort of Learning may not be ashamed to refresh their Memories by perusing it. I was the more easily persuaded to undertake it, because I could never as yet meet any Abbreviation of the Roman History, which was not in one respect or other lame and deficient: Either the Style was uncorrect, the Narration too tedious or obscure, or the true Order of Time miserably neglected.

As for Lucius Florus, though I confess there are abundance of things very prettily said by him, yet he so frequently interrupts the Series of the History, and is so everlasting an Affecter of pointed Sentences, to which he sacrifices the Truth without any Remorse, that he is not to be depended upon. Eutropius and Aurelius Victor lived in an unpolite Age, and not only pass over several important Occurrences, but commonly give a faulty Account of Matters of Fact.

I cannot answer for this, that it wholly comes up to the Dignity of this Subject; and indeed, as it is the first Undertaking of this Nature that ever appear'd in Publick, it cannot reasonably be expected that it should be carried to its highest Perfection at once: however, I may without Vanity affirm, that it has been considerably improved in the Version, as any one

that will be at the pains to compare the Translation with the Original will soon discover.

If it meets the favourable Reception which so useful and serviceable a Performance seems to deserve, the Translator may, perhaps, find Leisure enough hereafter, for the Advantage of our English Youth, to put it into the Universal Language.






A

Clear Method for the more easy Understanding the *Roman History*, &c.

The Origin of the ROMANS.

The Year of the World 2800. Before Jesus Christ 1184.

Quest.  *Desire to know the Origin of the Romans.*

Answ. They came from *Aeneas*, the Son of *Anchises*, who after the taking of *Troy* fled into *Italy*, and settled there.

Q. When did this happen?

A. In the Year 2800 of the Creation of the World.

Q. When Aeneas was in Italy, what did he there?

A. He married *Lavinia*, Daughter to *Latinus* King of the *Latins*, after he had in a single Combat kill'd *Turnus* King of the *Rutuli*, who pretended to the same Lady.

Q. Did he do nothing else?

A. He built a City there, which he called *Lavinium*.

Q. Who govern'd the Latins after the Death of Latinus?

A. *Aeneas*.

Q. How long did he reign?

A. No more than six Years.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. His Son *Ascanius*, whom he had by *Creusa*.

Before

Before we take in hand the Succession of the Kings of Rome, 'tis in some manner necessary to give that of the Latin Kings after the Destruction of Troy; and to remember that Æneas, Anchises his Son, and Son-in-law to Latinus, from whom the Latins derive their Name, was slain in a Battle four hundred twenty six Years before the building of Rome; and that Latinus reigned thirty five Years of it.

A CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE of the Latin Kings.

KINGS.	Year of the World.	Reign.
<i>Picus, Son of Saturn</i>	2757	37.
<i>Faunus</i>	2794	44.
<i>Latinus I.</i>	2838	35
<i>Æneas</i>	2872	6
<i>Ascanius, Son of Æneas</i>	2877	38
<i>Silvius, Son of Ascanius</i>	2915	29
<i>Æneas Silvius</i>	2944	31
<i>Latinus II.</i>	2975	51
<i>Alba Silvius</i>	3035	39
<i>Capetus I.</i>	3064	26
<i>Capys</i>	3090	28
<i>Capetus II.</i>	3118	13
<i>Tiberinus</i>	3131	8
<i>Agrippa Silvius</i>	3139	41
<i>Alladius, or Arimalius Silvius</i>	3180	19
<i>Aventinus Silvius</i>	3199	37
<i>Procus, or Palatinus Silvius</i>	3236	23
<i>Amulius Silvius</i>	3259	41
<i>Numitor.</i>	3299	2

The

*The Building of Rome.**The Year of the World 3301. Before Christ 753.**Q. WHEN was the City of Rome built?**A. In the 3961st Year of the Julian Period, 753 before the Christian Æra, 431 after the burning of Troy, and of the World 3301.**Q. Which was the Capital City of the Latins then?**A. Alba; because Julius that built it made it the Seat of his Empire.**Q. What King possessed the Throne at that time?**A. Amulius, after he had ejected his Brother Numitor.**Q. From whence was Rome so called?**A. From Romulus, who gave it his own Name.**Q. Why?**A. Because his Brother Remus and he having agreed, that he who saw the best Augury should name it; Romulus had the most favourable Augury, as having seen twelve Vultures, and the other only six.**The Means Romulus made use of to people his new City of Rome.**Q. WHAT Method did Romulus take to people his City?**A. He bethought himself of two Expedients.**Q. What were they?**A. In the first place he opened a publick Sanctuary in a little Wood, which was not far from the City, where all fugitive Slaves, Criminals, Bankrupts,*

rupts, and others of the same Quality, found Protection.

Q. Did this Expedient take effect ?

A. Ay.

Q. What did he do after this ?

A. Since the Romans had no Women among them, and their Neighbours would not marry with them, they were obliged to have recourse to a Stratagem.

Q. How was that ?

A. They published in all the neighbouring Provinces, that at such a time they design'd to celebrate some Sports. The Sabines came to see the Divertisement, and brought their Wives and Daughters hither. Now when they were most intent upon beholding the Sights, Romulus gave the Signal, and the Romans immediately carried off the Sabine Women, and married them.

Q. Romulus having thus peopled his City, what did he afterwards ?

A. He divided it into thirty Curiaë, or Wards, which he called Sabin.

Q. Did he do nothing besides ?

A. He also divided his Subjects into three Orders:

Q. As how ?

A. The first was that of the Senators, whom he created to the number of a hundred, and called them Patres, or Fathers, and their Children Patricians; the second was that of the Knights, and the third that of the People.

The several sorts of Government in the City of Rome.

Q. HOW was Rome govern'd at first ?

A. By Kings.

Q. How

Q. How do you call this sort of Government ?

A. Monarchy.

Q. Was Rome always govern'd by Kings ?

A. No ; it became a Republick after the Expulsion of Tarquin the Proud, who was the seventh King there.

Q. What do you mean by a Republick ?

A. That is to say, a State where several Persons command.

Q. What difference do you make between a Monarchy and a Republick ?

A. A Monarchy is a State where only one governs in Chief ; a Republick where the Administration is lodged in many Hands.

Q. How long did this Republick continue ?

A. It lasted in the first place from the Consulate of Brutus, to the Consulate of Claudius, which makes 245 Years ; and afterwards from the Consulate of Claudius to the Empire of Cæsar, which makes about as many Years more.

Q. Did Rome always continue a Republick ?

A. No ; it was afterwards governed by Emperors.

Q. What Difference is there between a King and an Emperor ?

A. 'Tis another Name, but the Authority is almost the same.

Q. How many sorts of Government have there been in Rome ?

A. Three : That of Kings, which lasted 250 Years, that of the Consuls 490, and that of the Emperors 360.

Q. How long did the Roman Empire continue from the first Year of Cæsar, to the Tenth of Constantine Palæologus, which makes up its Beginning and End ?

A. It

A. It continued a thousand five hundred and one Years.

Q. How many Kings had they at Rome ?

A. Seven ; whose Names you'll see in the following Table.

Q. How many Emperors have there been in the two Empires of the East and the West ?

A. The Forty-eight first possessed it intirely, the Twelve succeeding had the Empire of the *West*, and the other Sixty-three the Empire of the *East*.

The seven Kings of Rome.

The Year of the World 3301.

In the Fourth Year of the sixth Olympiad.

3961 of the Julian Period.

431 after the taking of Troy.

753 before the first Year of the Christian Era.

KINGS.	Year of the World.	Reign.
1. <i>Romulus.</i>	3301	38
<i>Inter-regnum.</i>	3339	
2. <i>Numa Pompilius.</i>	3340	43
3. <i>Tullus Hostilius.</i>	3383	32
4. <i>Ancus Martius.</i>	3414	34
5. <i>Tarquinius Priscus.</i>	3439	39
6. <i>Servius Tullus.</i>	3477	44
7. <i>Tarquinius Superbus.</i>	3521	44

The two first Consuls, *Brutus* and *Collatinus*, govern'd in the 245th Year of Rome, after the Expulsion of their Kings, on the 24th of February ; a Day observed in their Kalendar.

Romulus,

Romulus, the first King of Rome.

The Year of the World 3301. Before Christ 753.

Q. *I Desire to know something of the Birth of Romulus.*

A. He was the Son of *Rhea Silvia*, and supposed to be begotten by *Mars*.

Q. *Who was this Rhea Silvia?*

A. Daughter to *Numitor*, and Niece of *Amulius*.

Q. *What happened to this Lady?*

A. Her Uncle *Amulius* shut her up among the Vestal Virgins, that so by this Means he might make her incapable of having Children, who might one Day dispute the Throne he usurped with him.

Q. *Did this Policy of his succeed?*

A. No: For this young Vestal going one day to fetch some Water in a little Wood, which the *Albans* had consecrated to *Mars*, to be employ'd in the Sacrifices of the Goddess *Vesta*, she was ravished by an armed Man, who pretended to be the God *Mars*.

Q. *But what did Amulius when he saw her big with Child?*

A. He condemned her to die; but at the Intercession of *Antho*, only Daughter to this inhuman Tyrant, this Sentence was changed into perpetual Imprisonment.

Q. *What befel her in the Prison?*

A. She was brought to Bed of two Children.

Q. *And what happened to the poor Infants?*

A. *Amulius* immediately commanded them to be thrown into the *Tyber* in a little wooden Basket without a Cover.

Q. *How*

Q. How were they preserved ?

A. The Stream carried the two Infants to the Side of the River, and a certain Woman, called *Lupa*, directed thither by their Cries, took them up, and gave them suck for some time ; which occasioned the Report that they were suckled by a She-Wolf.

Q. Who took the Care to bring them up ?

A. One *Faustulus* by Name, the King's Shepherd, who knowing their Birth, took them from the Woman, carried them home, and gave them to his Wife *Acca Laurentia* to nurse them.

Q. When they came to Age, what did they then ?

A. *Faustulus* having told them who they were, they kill'd their Uncle *Amulius*.

Q. For what reason ?

A. To re-establish their Uncle *Numitor* in his Throne ; and lastly, in the second Year of his Reign they built *Rome*.

Q. What happened to Remus ?

A. As he was jesting and ridiculing the Smallness of the Ditch which *Romulus* had caused to be made, and leaping over it, he was killed by one of the Workmen, who gave him a great Blow on the Head with a Rake.

Q. How came Romulus to be King ?

A. After the Death of his Brother *Remus* he was owned as King by all his Followers.

Q. What did he do when he was King ?

A. He was a great Warriour, and gained a considerable Battle against the *Ceninians*, the *Antemnates*, and the *Crustumenians*, with whom he made War.

Q. What remarkable Performance did he do in this War ?

A. He

A. He killed their General with his own Hand, and defeated the rest of the Army.

Q. After this Victory, what did he ?

A. He entred Rome in a Chariot drawn by four Horses, covered with a Purple Robe, all the Prisoners of War marching in order before him.

Q. Did he not give them their Liberty again ?

A. Yes, at the instance of the Roman Women, who for the most part had Relations among them.

Q. He received them afterwards into the number of his Citizens ?

A. Right, and gave them the same Privileges with the rest of the Romans.

Q. Had Romulus no other War but this ?

A. He maintained a long and cruel War against the Sabines, who were mightily enraged at the taking away of their Wives and Daughters.

Q. During this War what remarkable Action happened ?

A. The Sabines possess'd themselves of the Capitol, by the means of Tarpeia, who had the keeping of one of the Gates, and delivered it to them.

Q. Upon what Condition ?

A. That they should give her the Golden Bracelets they wore on their Arms.

Q. And what ensued upon this ?

A. Instead of performing this Article, they press'd her to Death with the Weight of their Bucklers, and cut the Garison in pieces.

Q. Were there not several other Combates between the Romans and the Sabines ?

A. There was another, which had been exceeding bloody, if the Roman Wives, that had been carried off by Force, had not thrown themselves between

between the two Armies, and obtained a Peace with their Tears.

Q. The Sabines then were touched with Compassion at this sight ?

A. True ; both one and t'other side threw down their Arms, and swore they would never war against each other any more.

Q. What Agreement then did they make ?

A. That Rome should be the Capital City of their Empire, and that Romulus and Tatius, King of the Sabines, should reign together.

Q. Where did they live ?

A. Tatius continued in the Capitol which he had conquered, and Romulus chose Mount Palatine.

Q. Was not the Body of the Senate augmented by Tatius ?

A. He made 'em just as many more as they were before the late Articles.

Q. What was that Number ?

A. Three Hundred.

Q. Was any thing done in honour of the Women ?

A. They instituted the Matronalia, or Feast of the Matrons, which was to be celebrated yearly.

Q. How do they say Romulus died ?

A. We don't positively know. Some pretend that as he was haranguing his Soldiers a Tempest arose, and he disappear'd all on the sudden ; and this gave an occasion to the common Belief, that he was translated among the Gods.

Q. But which is the most probable Opinion ?

A. That the Senators, whom he treated too imperiously, killed him in the Midst of the Senate, so that each of them carried under his Robe some Piece of his Body, and afterwards made the People believe that he was mounted up to Heaven.

Q. After

Q. After the Death of Romulus, was not the Form of Government changed?

A. Yes; for the Senate being composed of Romans, 'twas resolved to chuse by Lot five Persons of both Nations, who should reign five Days alternately, till such time as they could find out one that was worthy to fill the Throne.

Q. How long did this Inter-regnum last?

A. A Twelvemonth.

Q. Was nothing done to the Honour of Romulus?

A. A Temple was built to him upon the Quirinal Mount, where he was adored under the Name of Quirinus.

Q. How long did he reign?

A. Thirty eight Years, and was succeeded by Numa Pompilius.

Numa Pompilius, the second King of Rome.

Year of the World 3340.

of Rome 40.

Q. FROM whence came Numa Pompilius?

A. From Cures, the Metropolis of the Sabines.

Q. How was he declared King?

A. Some Ambassadors went to offer him the Crown at Cures, where he then resided, and all in consideration of his great Piety.

Q. What things did he do, being arrived at Rome?

A. The

A. The first thing he did was to disband the Guards which *Romulus* had instituted for the Security of his Person.

Q. What made him do so ?

A. Because he said 'twas better for a Prince to make himself *belov'd* than *feared* by his Subjects.

Q. What did he do afterwards ?

A. He establish'd a certain Form of Sacrifices and Ceremonies, that were to be observ'd in the Worship of their Gods.

Q. Did he do any thing besides ?

A. He likewise instituted the *Pontiffs*, the *Augurs*, and the *Salian Priests*. In fine, he testified by his Laws and Actions, that nothing was more necessary in a State, than Religion and Justice.

Q. Did he not build some Temples ?

A. He built one to the Honour of *Janus*, which was to be shut in the time of Peace, and opened in War.

Q. Did he build any more ?

A. Yes, that which he consecrated to the Goddess *Vesta*, where he established the *Vestal Virgins*.

Q. Who were these Vestals ?

A. Certain Virgins that were chosen about the Age of four or five Years, out of the noblest Families in *Rome*, to be Priestesses of the Goddess *Vesta*.

Q. What was their Employment ?

A. To look after the holy Fire which burn'd incessantly upon an Altar, and was a Symbol or Character of the Divinity they ador'd.

Q. What Punishment was assign'd for those Vestals that let the Holy Fire go out ?

A. They

A. They were interr'd alive, and treated after the very same manner with those who violated their Chastity, to which they were obliged.

Q. Did Numa Pompilius do any thing remarkable besides this ?

A. He divided the Year into twelve Months, whereas *Rómulus* had only instituted ten. In short, he established several other Laws, which he said he received from the Goddess *Ægeria*.

Q. What manner of Death died he ?

A. He died of an Indisposition, being fourscore Years old, after a Reign of 43 Years, which he pass'd in a profound Peace.

Q. Had he any Children ?

A. He had four Sons, none of whom succeeded him in the Crown, but made four illustrious Families in *Rome*.

Q. Had he no Daughters ?

A. He had one called *Pompilia*, who was married to a *Sabine* Nobleman, whose Name was *Martius*.

Q. Who was Successor to Numa Pompilius ?

A. *Tullus Hostilius*.

Tullus Hostilius, third King of Rome.

Year of the World 3383. Of Rome 83.

Q. I Would be informed of what Family was *Tullus Hostilius* ?

A. He was Grandson of *Tullus Hostilius*, who was killed in endeavouring to retake the Capitol,

B

and

and was elected by the *Romans* for his heroick Actions.

Q. What remarkable thing did he in the beginning of his Reign ?

A. 'Twas he who first taught the Romans military Discipline, and the Art of fighting regularly.

Q. Did he do nothing else ?

A. He distributed among the ordinary sort of People all the Demefns which the Kings before him kept in their own Hands, and reserved no more for himself than what he had when he was but a private Person.

Q. What considerable things happened in his Reign ?

A. The famous Combat between the Horatii and Curiatii.

Q. Pray recount to me how this was managed.

A. The Romans and Albans being willing to put a speedy Conclusion to the War, which had lasted a long while, 'twas resolv'd on both sides to chuse out three Men to fight for their Country.

Q. And what were their Conditions ?

A. If the three Albans were vanquish'd, Alba was to submit it self to the Government of the Romans: On the other hand, if the Roman Champions were beaten, then Rome must do the like to Alba.

Q. Who were pitched upon for this Exploit ?

A. The Romans chose the three Horatii, Brothers, and the Albans the three Curiatii, who were three Brothers likewise.

Q. What was the Success of this Combat ?

A. The three Curiatii were at first wounded, and two of the Horatii slain.

Q. The

Q. The third Horatius being left to fight the other three, what became of him?

A. He pretended to fly for it, and as the Curiatii eagerly pursued him, he faced about, and kill'd 'em one after another.

Q. Did he not soon tarnish the Glory of this illustrious Action?

A. Yes.

Q. As how?

A. By murdering his own Sister.

Q. What instigated him to do that?

A. Returning victorious, and meeting his Sister in Tears for one of the Curiatii, who was promised her in Marriage, he run her through with his Sword.

Q. Was he punished for this Crime?

A. No; his late Victory excused him.

Q. The Romans being thus Conquerors, what did Tullus after this?

A. He ordered the City of Alba to be razed to the Ground, and commanded the Albans to come and live at Rome, with their King Metius Sufferius.

Q. What became of that King?

A. He was sometime after tied to the Tails of four Horses, and torn in pieces.

Q. For what Misdemeanour was so severe a Punishment inflicted on him?

A. For forming a Conspiracy to make himself Master of Rome, and betraying the Romans, in not sending them the Assistance he was obliged to give them.

Q. After what manner died Tullus Hostilius?

A. He and his whole Family were burnt by Lightning, which set his Palace on fire.

Q. *How long did he reign?*

A. *Thirty-two Years.*

Q. *Who succeeded him?*

A. *Ancus Martius, who resembled Numa Pompilius as well for his Justice as his Piety.*

Ancus Martius *fourth King of Rome.*

Year of the World 3414.

Of Rome 114.

Q. *Of whom was Ancus Martius descended?*

A. *He was the Son of Pompilia, and Grandson to Numa Pompilius.*

Q. *What particular things did Ancus Martius do?*

A. *Nothing, if we except his inclosing Mount *Aventine* and the *Janiculum* within the City, building new Walls about it, and laying the Foundation of the City *Ostia* on the Mouth of the *Tyber*.*

Q. *Had he no Wars at all?*

A. *He had one with the *Latins*, whom he defeated in several Battles.*

Q. *How died he?*

A. *Of a Sickness in the twenty-fourth Year of his Reign.*

Q. *How many Children had he?*

A. *He had two, whom he left under the Care of *Tarquinius Priscus*, who took away the Kingdom from them, and got himself to be declared King of *Rome*.*

Q. *Was it then this *Tarquinius Priscus* that succeeded him?*

A. *Yes.*

Tarquinius

Tarquinius Priscus, fifth King of Rome.

Year of the World 3439.

Of Rome 139.

Q *From whence came Tarquinius Priscus ?*

A. He was originally of *Corinth*, and Son to a rich Merchant, whose Name was *Demaratus*.

Q. *How came he to be raised to this Dignity ?*

A. Under the Reign of *Ancus Martius* he quitted the City of the *Tarquins* to seek his Fortune at *Rome*, which it seems answer'd his Ambition.

Q. *What happen'd to him in his Journey thither ?*

A. As he came near the City, an Eagle lighted and took off his Bonnet, and soon after placed it on his Head again : *Tanaquil* told him, that this lucky Omen promised him the Regal Authority.

Q. *Why quitted he his former Name Lucumon, to take that of Tarquinius ?*

A. In remembrance of the City of the *Tarquins*, where he was born.

Q. *How got he himself declared King ?*

A. After the Death of *Ancus Martius*, he assembled the Senators and People ; and being supported by his Friends, and those whom he had gained to his Party by Money, he put in for the Crown, and managed his Affairs so dextrously, that he obtained it without any difficulty.

Q. *What did he do to secure himself in his new Kingdom ?*

A. He augmented the Senate with a Hundred Senators, and enlarged the Authority of that August Body. He likewise added Three Hundred

new Members to the Order of the Knights, which was their Number before.

Q. What other things were done by him in particular ?

A. He ordered a Bundle of Rods bound up together, with an Ax in the midst, to be carried before the Magistrates. He regulated the Stuffs and Fashion of the Robes that were to be worn by the Kings and Augurs ; and commanded the Chairs of the Senators to be made of Ivory.

Q. What did he do besides all this ?

A. He regulated the Habits which were to distinguish the Knights from others that served in the Wars, and enjoined them to wear golden Rings on their Fingers. Then to distinguish the Children of illustrious Families, he ordered them to wear long Robes, bordered with Purple.

Q. Did he undertake any considerable Building ?

A. He built the Circus between Mount Palatine and Mount Aventine, to have there represented the Combats of Gladiators, and of Beasts, or any other Diversions of the like nature, that derived their Name from thence.

Q. What was remarkable in his Reign ?

A. That he was the First that wore a Crown and a Scepter, with the other Marks of the Regal Dignity.

Q. What other remarkable Passages have you ?

A. Being one day minded to try *Actius Nævius*, President of the Augurs, he asked him, Whether what he thought of in his Mind was possible to be done or no ?

Q. What Answer did Actius return him ?

A. After

A. After having consulted the Birds, he positively told him it was. Why, says the King, I was thinking whether I was able to cut this Whetstone with a Razor: That you are, replied the Augur; and at the same time the King accordingly cut it.

Q. Did not this give a mighty Reputation to the Augurs?

A. Yes; for from that time the Romans never began any Enterprize without consulting 'em.

Q. What did Tarquin do besides to recommend himself?

A. He extinguish'd the Name of the Latins through all Italy, having possessed himself of most of their Cities.

Q. What Misfortune befel him?

A. He was slain by two Peasants, that were bribed to do it by the Children of Ancus Marcius.

Q. Why did they get him assassinated?

A. Because they were angry to see him elevated to the Throne, to their Prejudice.

Q. How old was he when they slew him?

A. Eighty four Years old, and reigned thirty eight of them.

Q. How many Children did he leave behind him?

A. He left two, whom he placed under the Care of Servius Tullus.

Q. Who succeeded Tarquin?

A. The above mention'd Servius Tullus.

Servius Tullus, sixth King of Rome.

The Year of the World 3477. Of Rome 177.

Q. FROM what sort of Parents was Servius Tullus descended?

B 4 *A.* He

A. He was Son to the Prince of *Cornicula*, a small City which *Tarquin* had taken in the Province of the *Latins*.

Q. What Adventures happened to them?

A. His Father was killed at *Corinth*; and his Mother, who was then big of him, was carried Prisoner to *Rome*, where *Tanaquil* the Wife of *Tarquin*, took an Affection to her, and lodged her in the Palace, where she was delivered of *Servius Tullus*.

Q. What happened at his Birth?

A. 'Twas remarkable, that lying in his Cradle, a lambent Flame play'd about his Head for above the space of an Hour, and did him not the least Injury.

Q. What did *Tanaquil*, who was was particularly well skilled in Divination, believe of this Prodigy?

A. She was of Opinion that it promised the Kingdom to this Infant; and after that time took great care of his Education, and gave him her Daughter in Marriage.

Q. How came he to be proclaimed King?

A. *Servius* being Son-in-Law to *Tarquin*, and having the Management of all Affairs in his own hands at the time of his Death, he behaved himself, by the Queen's Assistance, so well in this Place, that he was elected and proclaimed King by the People some time after the Death of that Prince.

Q. What remarkable things does History tell of him?

A. Having vanquished the *Tuscans* and the *Vejentes*, he exceedingly augmented the City of *Rome*; added the *Quirinal*, *Viminal*, and the *Exquiline Hills* to it, and encompassed it with Walls and Ditches.

Q. What

Q. What other Actions are related of him?

A. He was the first that took a Survey of the Roman Citizens, and valued every Man's Estate to tax him proportionably to his Income, that so his Troops might be better accommodated.

Q. How often was this done?

A. Once in five Years.

Q. How was this Space of Time called?

A. A *Lustrum*.

Q. How many Children had he?

A. Two, each of whom was nam'd *Tullia*.

Q. What sort of Inclinations had they?

A. The eldest was of a sweet agreeable Temper, the youngest fiery and ambitious.

Q. Whom did they marry?

A. The two *Tarquins*, Brothers-in-law, or Nephews to *Servius*.

Q. How came they to marry them?

A. *Tullus* apprehending that these *Tarquins*, the Sons or Grandsons of *Tarquinius Priscus*, would shock him in his Throne, thought the best way to secure them in his Interest would be to bestow his eldest Daughter upon the elder *Tarquin*, who was naturally ambitious and violent, and his youngest upon the other, whose Name was *Aruns*, who had as much Moderation as his Brother had Heat and Passion.

Q. What was the Consequence of these Marriages?

A. As these things were wholly managed by a Principle of Policy, and *Servius* had no regard to the different Characters and Dispositions of the married Couple, he was the Occasion that *Tarquin*, who liked not the too gentle Humour of

his Wife, entred into a strict Correspondence with his Sister-in-law, and debauched her.

Q. I desire to know the result of this Correspondence.

A. Tarquin murdered his own Wife, and the youngest Sister poisoned her Husband.

Q. Why did she do so?

A. To put herself in a Capacity to marry her Brother-in-law, and take away the Crown from her Father.

Q. How came Tarquin to be declared King?

A. Suffering himself to be over-persuaded by Tullia, who told him he must turn the old Gentleman out of his Kingdom without waiting for his Death, he summon'd the Senators, to tell them that he was minded to reign.

Q. What happened upon this?

A. He placed himself on the Seat where the Kings were accustomed to sit, and began to call his Father-in-law Servius, an Usurper.

Q. And what became of Servius?

A. This making a great noise in the Senate, the King came to know the reason of it; Tarquin immediately raising himself from his Seat, laid hold of him, and throwing him down stairs, ordered the Soldiers to assassinate him.

Q. After this Murder how did Tullia manage herself?

A. Being informed that Tarquin was own'd for King, she immediately got her Chariot ready to go and congratulate him; and as she came to the Street where the Body of her Father lay across the Way, the Coachman going to turn back and pass some other way, the unnatural Fury would not suffer such a Delay, but bid him drive on,

on, and pass over the Body of her Father, that was all bloody.

Q. How long did Servius Tullus reign?

A. Forty four Years.

Q. Who succeeded him?

A. Tarquin the Proud.

Tarquinius Superbus, Seventh King of Rome.

Year of the World 3521.

Of Rome 221.

Q. I Desire to be informed particularly of the Birth of Tarquin.

A. Some Historians tell us he was the Son of Tarquinius Priscus; but others are of opinion he was only his Grandson.

Q. How did he govern his Kingdom?

A. 'Twas after the Death of Servius, whom he caused to be assassinated, that he seized upon the Kingdom, and behaved himself with all imaginable Arrogance and Cruelty.

Q. Why was he surnamed Superbus?

A. From the Insolence of his Temper.

Q. What did he do when he was made King?

A. He despised the Authority of the Senate, and frequently put to death, or banish'd, or imprison'd the Senators and chief Men of the City, upon false Reports and Accusations.

Q. What remarkable things did he do?

A. He defeated the Volscians by force of Arms, but made himself Master of Gabii by Treachery.

Q. How was that managed?

A. He pretended to fall out with his Son Sextus in the presence of most of his Captains;

may, his Passion was carried on so far, that he was going to strike him.

Q. What does Sextus upon this ?

A. Away he flies, and sends to the *Gabians* to beg the Protection of their City against the barbarous Treatment of an unnatural Father.

Q. And did the Inhabitants receive him ?

A. Yes : And he knew so well how to establish himself in their good Opinion by fighting for them, that they made him their General, and Governor of the Town.

Q. When Sextus found himself in a condition to do what he pleased, what did he then ?

A. He dispatches one Messenger only to his Father, as they had agreed before.

Q. What Message was the Fellow entrusted with ?

A. With nothing but Compliments.

Q. What does Tarquin ?

A. He carries him into his Garden, and in his presence knocks off the Heads of all the highest Poppies.

Q. Without doubt Sextus understood well enough his Father's Meaning.

A. Right : He struck off the Heads of the principal Men among the *Gabians* ; some he imprison'd, others he accused of Treason, to find a Pretext to condemn, and so make them incapable of doing him any Injury.

Q. What Disgrace happened afterwards to Tarquin ?

A. His Reign daily becoming more and more odious to the *Romans*, they took his Crown from him, and turned him with his whole Family out of the City for a certain Crime committed by his Son.

Q. What

Q. What was that ?

A. Sextus, who imagined that his high Birth would carry him out in every thing, having beheld *Lucretia*, the Wife of *Collatinus*, he was struck with her Beauty; but as he could not hope to satisfy his Passion easily (for besides that she was a Lady of the severest Virtue imaginable, she was married to a Prince of the Royal Family) he was resolved to ravish her.

Q. How was that effected ?

A. In the Night-time he enters her Chamber, claps his Dagger to her Breast, and threatned to kill her if she did not comply with his Desire.

Q. These Menaces, did they affright her ?

A. No.

Q. What did Sextus then to accomplish his Intentions ?

A. Seeing nothing was able to move this illustrious Lady, he tells her, that after he had killed her, he would kill her Slave likewise, and leave him in her Bed, and then publish abroad, that he killed them both in the Act of Adultery.

Q. Then this Consideration prevailed with her ?

*A. Yes : for she rather chose to surrender her Body to the Passion of *Sextus*, than suffer her Memory to be dishonoured by so black a Calumny.*

Q. What did she after this ?

*A. After she had shewn this Weakness, she hides a Dagger under her Gown, and sends to find out her Husband *Collatinus*, her Brother *Lucretius*, and her Cousin *Brutus*, who were encamp'd before *Ardea* : She complained to them of the brutal Action of this libidinous Prince, begg'd them to revenge the Injury done
to*

to her; and immediately drawing out the Dagger from under her Gown, she struck it into her Belly, being resolved not to survive the Loss of her Honour.

Q. What did Brutus do after she was dead?

A. He draws the bloody Dagger out of *Lucretia's* Wound, and swore by her chaste Blood, that he would chase *Tarquin* and all his guilty Family out of *Rome*.

Q. How long did Tarquin reign?

A. Twenty four Years.

Q. Where died he?

A. In *Tuscany*, after having made several Efforts in vain to repossess himself of *Rome*.

Of the Alteration in the State of Rome.

Year of the World 3545.

Of Rome 245.

Q. AFTER Tarquin was turn'd out of Rome by Brutus, by whom was the City govern'd?

A. By Consuls.

Q. When began this Government?

A. 245 Years after the Foundation of *Rome*, and 510 before the Birth of *Jesus Christ*.

Q. What were these Consuls?

A. Certain Magistrates, in whose hands the Sovereign Authority was lodg'd for a Year only.

Q. What was their Office?

A. To command the Armies.

Q. Who were the two first Consuls?

A. *Brutus* and *Collatinus*.

*Q. Was not the Consulate taken away from *Collatinus*?*

A. Yes.

Q. Wherefore?

A. Because

A. Because he carried the Name of *Tarquin*, which was odious to the People.

Q. Whom did they put in his place?

A. *Valerius Publicola*.

Q. What is remarkable of *Brutus*?

A. That he for a long time counterfeited the Madman, to avoid *Tarquin's* Cruelty, who had put to death *Marcus Junius*, his Father, and his Brother, with several more of the Senators.

Q. What did he do besides this, worthy of Remembrance?

A. He lov'd his Country so entirely, that he beheaded two of his Sons for conspiring against the Republick.

Q. By whom was that Conspiracy carried on?

A. By the Deputies whom *Tarquin* had dispatch'd to *Rome* to negotiate the Affair of his Restoration.

Q. Where did *Brutus* die?

A. He lost his Life soon after, fighting with *Aruns*, the Son of *Tarquin*, in a Battle against those of *Tarquin's* Party, and the *Vejentes* who espoused his Quarrel.

Q. What happened to them in this Duel?

A. They ran one another thro' with their Lances.

The Wars which the Romans were obliged to maintain.

THE *Hetruscan* War.

The War of the *Latins*.

The War of the *Volscians*.

The War of the *Vejentes*.

The War of the *Gauls*.

The second War of the *Latins*.

The

The War of the *Samnites*.

The War of the *Tarentines*.

The first *Punick War*.

The second *Punick War*.

The War of *Antiochus*.

The War of *Macedonia*.

The third *Punick War*.

The War of *Corinth*.

The War of *Portugal*.

The War of *Numantia*.

The War of the *Slaves*.

The War of *Jugurtha*.

The War of *Mithridates*.

Q. Besides these had they no Civil Wars?

A. Yes, they had two: The first between Marius and Sylla, and the second between Caesar and Pompey. 'Tis true, there were several Seditions, which shall be recounted in their proper Places.

Q. For what Reason did the Romans undertake all those Wars?

A. To defend their Liberty, preserve their Limits, protect their Allies, and enlarge their Empire.

The War of Etruria.

Year of the World 3547.

Of Rome 247.

Q. WHICH was the first War that the Romans were engaged in after the Expulsion of their Kings?

A. That of Etruria,

Q. How did it begin?

A. Porfenna, King of that Country, being resolved to support Tarquin's Part, came to besiege Rome with a powerful Army.

Q. How

Q. How was it ended?

A. By the Valour of *Horatius Cocles*, and *Mutius Scævola*'s Bravery; which so effectually daunted him, that he sent Deputies to the *Romans* to offer them Peace.

Q. How many Hostages did they give him?

A. Twenty young Ladies of the greatest Beauty and Quality in the City.

Q. What remarkable Action was it that Horatius Cocles performed?

A. He alone sustained for some time the Fury of the Enemies, who would have passed the Bridge to enter the City; and at last when it was broken down, he threw himself into the *Tyber*, and swam cross it, without abandoning his Arms all this while.

Q. And Mutius Scævola's Action, how was that?

A. He privately stole into the Enemy's Camp, with a design to kill the King, but fail'd in his Attempt, for he mistook the King's Secretary for the King himself.

Q. What did they do to Scævola, after this unfortunate Disappointment?

A. He was taken and brought before *Porfenna*.

Q. And after what manner did he behave himself there?

A. He puts his criminal Right-hand, which committed the mistake, into a Fire which happened to be there: And know, says he to the King, that three hundred of us young *Roman* Gentlemen have conspired your Death.

Q. What Effects did so resolute an Action produce?

A. *Porfenna*, affrighted at the Hardiness and Resolution of the *Romans*, offered them a Peace, and

and accepted of the above-mentioned Ladies by way of Hostages.

Q. What happened upon that?

A. Clelia, who was one of the twenty who were given in Hostage to Porfenna, having slipt from her Guards, swims over the Tyber on horse-back, and came back to Rome.

Q. What did they do to her, when she was arrived there?

A. The Consul fearing lest the World would accuse him of Infidelity, was for surrendering her into Porfenna's hands, who sent her honourably back again to Rome, with some other young Romans, and made a Peace.

The Wars of the Latins.

Year of the World 3555.

Of Rome 255.

Q. WHICH was the second War that the Romans were obliged to sustain?

A. That of the Latins, who took up Arms at the Instigation of Manlius, Son-in-Law to Tarquin.

Q. And after what manner did it end?

A. A bloody Battle that was fought near the Lake of Regillus, soon put an end to it.

Q. Who were the Generals of the two Armies?

A. Manlius was at the head of the Latins, and Aulus Posthumius commanded the Romans.

Q. Which side gain'd the Victory?

A. 'Twas in suspense for some time, but at last it declared it self in favour of the Romans.

Q. How many Men were killed on the Spot?

A. There were forty thousand Men slain in the Action: Thirty four thousand of the Latins,
in

in which number was *Manlius*; and fix thousand of the *Romans*. After the Death of *Manlius*, the *Tarquins* lost all hopes of being ever restor'd.

The War of the Volscians.

Year of the World 3559.

Of Rome 259.

Q. WHICH was the third War the *Romans* had?

A. That of the *Volscians* and the *Aequi*.

Q. Why did they declare War against these People?

A. Because they continually disturbed and annoy'd the *Romans*.

Q. When did this War begin?

A. In the Year of *Rome* 259, and it lasted for several Years.

Q. By whom were the *Volscians* defeated?

A. By *Quintus Cincinnatus*, who after he had performed many glorious Exploits formerly, retired to his Country-House, where he lived quietly, tilling his Ground, and now was taken from the Plough to be made Dictator.

Q. What memorable things did he do?

A. By his Valour he saved the Army commanded by the Consul *Marcus Minutius*, which was surrounded by the Enemy.

Q. After this Expedition, what became of *Cincinnatus*?

A. He peaceably return'd to his old Employment at his Country-House.

Q. What other remarkable things happened during this War?

A. The

A. The Adventures of Coriolanus.

Q. Who was this Coriolanus ?

A. He was a Roman Gentleman, whose Name was Martius.

Q. Who gave him then the Sirname of Coriolanus ?

A. The Consul Martius, for having performed Wonders at the taking of Corioli.

Q. What befel him ?

A. He was condemned to Banishment in the Year of Rome 263.

Q. Upon what account ?

A. For having spoken contemptibly of the Tribunes.

Q. Whither fled he ?

A. To the Volscians, as being the most inveterate Enemies to the Romans, and consequently the fittest to execute his Revenge.

Q. What did he among the Volscians ?

A. He engaged them to renew the War with the Romans, in the Year 263.

Q. Did he command their Troops ?

A. The Volscians chose him for their General, with Tullus Accius, who at that time commanded them.

Q. And what famous Exploits did he perform ?

A. He signalized himself in several Encounters, wherein he always defeated the Romans.

Q. Did he always take the same Advantage over the Romans ?

*A. No : For being encamped near the Gates of the City, with a design to besiege it, vanquished by the Prayers and Tears of his Mother *Veturia*, and his Wife *Volumnia*, whom the Senate deputed to go and intercede with him, he abandon'd*

abandon'd his Enterprize, and drew the Army off, in the Year 266.

Q. And what was done by way of Recompence to so fortunate a Mediation?

A. They built a Temple, which was consecrated to the Fortune of the Women.

Q. What was the End of Coriolanus?

A. Accius becoming jealous of him, order'd him to be assassinated by ten or a dozen Villains, who accused him of Treason.

Q. Had the Volscians any other Wars but what are already mentioned?

A. Yes: But the Death of Coriolanus occasion'd their Ruin, for they were entirely defeated in a famous Battle by Spurius Cassius.

Q. After all these Conquests, did this Spurius Cassius enjoy himself long?

A. No: For three Years after he was thrown down headlong from the Tarpeian Rock.

Q. How came this Misfortune to besal him?

*A. Because he was accused of a Design to get himself declared King. 'Twas he who was Author of the * Lex Agraria in the Year 268.*

The War of the Veientes.

The Year of the World 3571. Of Rome 271.

Q. WHEN began the War of the Veientes?

A. In the Year of Rome 271.

Q. Who declared it against them?

A. The Fabians.

** A Law that respected the Division of Lands.*

Q. How

Q. How came that about?

A. The Family of the *Fabians* begg'd of the People of *Rome* to leave the Management of the War to their Care, and they would undertake it at their own Expence.

Q. How many were there of this illustrious Name?

A. Three hundred.

Q. And how came they off?

A. After having frequently defeated their Enemies, they unluckily fell at last into an Ambuscade, which the *Veientes* had prepar'd for them; and by this means the *Fabians* were wholly cut off, in the Year of *Rome* 277.

Q. Near what Place did this Defeat befall 'em?

A. Near the River *Cremora*. And the Gate thro' which this Honourable Family sallied out of *Rome*, was called the *Scelerata*, or Wicked.

Q. Had the *Veientes* always such Success?

A. No: For the Year following the Consul *Servilius* put an end to this War by an Overthrow he gave them.

Q. Did not he put an end to other Wars beside this?

A. He had frequent Rencounters with the *Volscians*, who were often beaten, and particularly by *Quintus Capitolinus*.

Q. What other considerable Actions did *Capitolinus* perform?

A. In the Year 286 he took *Antium*, the capital City of the *Volscians*.

Q. Did he do nothing else?

A. Ten Years after the taking of this City, being called from his Country-Seat, where he employ'd himself in cultivating his own Grounds, he was

was created Dictator, and in that Quality overcame the *Æqui*, and made them first pass under the Yoke.

Q. By whom was the City of the Veientes taken ?

A. By Camillus the Dictator, after a Siege of ten years continuance, in the Year of Rome 358.

Q. By what means did he take it ?

A. By undermining it.

Q. What particular Passages happened at this Siege ?

A. The Soldiers were resolved not to return home till they made themselves Masters of the Place, and bound themselves by a solemn Oath to observe it: And this was the first time they begun to pass the Winter under Tents.

Q. This same Camillus did not he signalize his Valour upon other Occasions ?

A. He brought the Fidenates into Subjection, and the City of Falisci, but by a very generous Action.

Q. How was that, I pray ?

A. A Schoolmaster put the most considerable Children for their Birth in the Town into his hands, expecting to get a mighty Reward for his pains; but Camillus order'd him to be stript stark naked, and so to be soundly whipt from his Camp to the City, whither he sent him, with all his Boys.

A Ceremony the Romans had of using their Enemies after they had conquered them.

The War of the Gauls.

Year of the World 3663. Of Rome 363.

Q. *WHEN began the War of the Gauls?*

A. In the Year of Rome 363.

Q. *Where did it first break out?*

A. Having entered *Italy*, to the Number of above a Hundred Thousand Men, out of an Expectation of finding a mighty Booty there, they first besieged *Clusum*.

Q. *Did not the Romans take the Part of the Clusians, their Allies?*

A. Yes; they sent Ambassadors to the Gauls, who instead of hearkening to them, rais'd the Siege of *Clusum*, and marched directly to *Rome*.

Q. *What did the Romans when they heard of their March?*

A. They sent *Fabius* the Consul to oppose their coming, with a powerful Army.

Q. *And did a Fight hereupon ensue?*

A. A most bloody Battle was fought near the River *Allia*, where the Roman Army was entirely defeated.

Q. *And what did the Gauls after this terrible Conquest?*

A. They immediately entered the City of *Rome*, finding the Gates open, and the Place abandon'd.

Q. *And how did the Gauls behave themselves, being now Master of the Town?*

A. They effectually plunder'd it, and coming into the Senate-house, massacred all the Senators, and

and afterwards burnt the whole City down to the ground.

Q. What did they besides?

A. After all this Ravaging and Desolation, Brennus, who commanded the Gauls, besieged the Capitol, whither the Roman Youth retired with Manlius.

Q. How long did this Siege continue?

A. Six whole Months, after which Brennus order'd a great number of Ladders to be made, designing to attempt the Scalade of it in the Night.

Q. And did his Design take effect?

A. It had certainly succeeded, if Manlius and the rest of the Besieged had not been awaken'd by the noise of some Geese in the Garison, and beaten back the Gauls that were already got upon the Ramparts, and thrown down headlong those that were upon the Ladders.

Q. Did the Gauls abandon the Place upon this?

A. No, they hoped to carry it at last by Famine; but Manlius perceiving their design, threw abundance of Loaves into their Camp, to let 'em see they were not straitned for Provisions.

Q. Were they not weary of so long a Siege?

A. Yes; and sent to tell the Besieged they would draw off and leave their City, provided they would give them a thousand Pound of Gold.

Q. Did any remarkable Accident happen during this Capitulation?

A. Camillus, who had been banished some time ago, and recall'd with all speed to come to the Relief of the City, arrived thither at the head of Forty Thousand Men, whom he had pick'd up in his March, beats the Gauls out of

Rome, and afterwards pursuing them for two or three Leagues, gives them an entire Defeat.

Q. *What does he after this Victory?*

A. He returns to Rome in Triumph, and stops the People (who would have fain gone to live at Veii, because Rome was all burnt down) with such powerful Arguments, that he persuades them to remove the Rubbish, clear the Ruins, and build a new City.

Q. *How long was it rebuilding?*

A. Not above a Year.

Q. *And how was this War ended at last?*

A. Afterwards the Gauls were wholly defeated by Manlius and Dolabella.

Q. *How happen'd the Death of Manlius, whom they surnam'd Capitolinus?*

A. 'Twas after his having defended the Capitol, and intriguing to make himself King, that he was thrown headlong from the top of that very Capitol which he had defended with so much Gallantry.

Q. *What memorable Passage fell out in the Year 393 of the building of the City?*

A. A Gulph appeared in the midst of the publick Place, which they could fill up by no manner of Means.

Q. *Were not the Augurs consulted about this?*

A. Yes.

Q. *And what Answer did they return?*

A. That it would never close again till the most precious thing in Rome was thrown into it.

Q. *And what Method did they take?*

A. At the very time when they were most perplexed to find out this precious thing, Marcus Curtius mounts his Horse, leaps into it all armed as he was, and the Gulph immediately closed up.

*The War of the Latins.**Year of the World 3714.**Of Rome 414.**Q. WHO declared War against the Latins ?**A. The Romans did in the Year of Rome 414.**Q. Wherefore did the Romans declare War against them ?**A. Because they pretended to have a Right to the Privileges of Roman Citizens, a Share in the Government, and bearing of all Offices.**Q. What remarkable Things happened in the Course of this War ?**A. The first is, that a young Gentleman of the Latins singling himself out of the Army to challenge any Roman to fight him, young Manlius, Son to Manlius Torquatus the Consul, rides up to him, fights him, and kills him.**Q. And what Reward had Manlius for so brave an Action ?**A. But a sorry one ; for his Father order'd his Head to be struck off before the whole Army, for having violated the military Discipline.**Q. What were those Orders ?**A. The Consuls had issued out an express Prohibition for any one to quit his Post till the Signal for the Battle was given.**Q. What was the second remarkable Thing ?**A. 'Tis this ; Decius the Consul devoted himself for his Country, by running into the midst of the Enemies.*

The War against the Samnites.

The Year of the World 3711. Of Rome 411.

Q. WHEN did the War against the Samnites begin?

A. In the Year of Rome 411.

Q. Why did the Romans declare War against them?

A. 'Twas at the request of the Campanians, who had put themselves under the Protection of the Romans.

Q. How long did this War continue?

A. It lasted fifty Years.

Q. What Accidents of note happened during this Interval?

A. Two things that deserve to be remark'd: The first is, that the Samnites finding themselves not strong enough to engage the Romans by Force of Arms, were obliged to have recourse to a Stratagem.

Q. Tell me how it was managed?

A. They chose ten of the craftiest Soldiers out of the Army, and apparell'd them like Shepherds; then they gave each of them a small Flock of Sheep, and having instructed them in all they were to do, posted them on the Road where the Roman Army was to pass.

Q. Well, and what did these Shepherds do, so merrily burlesqu'd?

A. Being in their respective Places, they were met by the Van-Couriers of the Army.

Q. And what Questions did they ask them?

A. Whether they knew where the Army of the Samnites was gone.

Q. What

Q. What Answer did the counterfeit Shepherds return?

A. That they had actually besieged Luceria?

Q. Upon this Advice what did the Romans do?

A. T was resolved to march to the Relief of this City, because it was a Place of great Importance to them.

Q. And what followed upon that Resolution?

A. The Army of the Romans being shut up in the Defiles through which they must of necessity pass before they could reach this Place, the Samnites fell vigorously upon them, plundered them of all their Arms, and made them pass under the Yoke.

Q. Did not the Romans soon after revenge this Affront?

A. Yes; for some time after Fabius and Papyrius defeated the Samnites intirely.

Q. Which is the second Thing that is to be remarked?

A. That young Decius, in a Battle against the Samnites, and the Gauls who had join'd them, perform'd the same that his Father had done upon a like Occasion; that is to say, he devoted himself to Death, and flung himself into the midst of his Enemies.

The War against the Tarentines.

The Year of the World 3772.

Of Rome 472.

Q. WHY did the Romans make War upon the Tarentines?

A. Because they pillag'd a Fleet belonging to

the People of *Rome*, and ill-treated the Ambassadors that were sent to complain of this Injury.

Q. When was the War declared against them?

A. In the Year 472, and with that Success, that *L. Æmilius Barbula* defeated them, together with the *Samnites* and *Salentines* that came to their Assistance.

Q. And what Shifts did this Overthrow put them upon?

A. It obliged them to beg Relief of *Pyrrhus* in the Year 474, who transported a vast Army into *Italy*, wherein he had abundance of Elephants, Animals till that time utterly unknown to the *Romans*.

Q. How many Battles were fought during this War?

A. Two that were considerable ones: The first was fought in *Campania*, near *Heraclea*, and the second in *Lucania*.

Q. What was the Success of this first Battle?

A. The *Romans* under the Conduct of *Levinus* had the worst on't; but they were vanquished rather by the Disorder the strange sight of those huge Elephants put them into, than by the Forces of *Pyrrhus*.

Q. Were store of Prisoners taken here?

A. Yes; but upon *Fabricius's* redemanding them, *Pyrrhus* sent them all back without taking Ransom for them.

Q. What did Pyrrhus after he had gain'd this Battle?

A. He visited the Field where this Scene was transacted; and observing that the *Romans* still grasp'd those that had given them their Death's Wound; that, dead as they were, a certain Fierceness

Fierceness appeared in their Looks ; and that all their Wounds were honourably received before ; he cried out in a great Amazement, Oh ! How easy a matter were it for me to conquer the whole World, if I had the Romans for Soldiers, or the Romans had me for their King !

Q. What did Pyrrhus after this ?

A. He sent Ambassadors to Rome with considerable Presents, to endeavour to accommodate the Matter between the Tarentines and them.

Q. The Ambassadors being sent back, what did Pyrrhus ask them at their return ?

A. He demanded of them what they thought of Rome : and they immediately answer'd him, That their City seem'd to be a Temple, and their Senate an Assembly of the Gods.

Q. Did not the Romans bring a second Army into the Field ?

A. Yes. Nay, they were so incredibly diligent, that Pyrrhus in mighty Admiration said of them ; Without question I am born under the Constellation of Hercules : I have a fine time on't here, to cut off the Heads of my Enemies, since new ones perpetually arise from their Blood, like those of Hydra, to persecute me.

Q. Well, and what was the Success of the second Battle that was fought in Lucania ?

A. Those very Elephants that gained Pyrrhus his first Battle, lost him the second.

Q. How happened that ?

A. It so fell out, that one Caius Minutius cut off the Trunk of one of the Elephants, which made the Creature cry out so furiously, that he affrighted his Fellows ; so away they ran back upon their own Forces, broke their Ranks, and

put the Army into so great a Confusion, that it was no difficult matter for the Romans to defeat them.

Q. What follow'd after this Battle?

A. Pyrrhus's Physician came to Fabricius, offering to poison his own Master; but the generous Consul sent him back to Pyrrhus, who commanded him immediately to be hanged.

Q. After this Overthrow, where did Pyrrhus turn himself?

A. He goes into Sicily to assist the Syracusans against the Carthaginians; but his Expedition not succeeding to his Expectation, he goes back into Italy in the Year 479, where he was beaten, and his Camp forced by the Romans.

Q. After this last Defeat, whither did he go?

A. After he had quitted Italy, he returned into Epirus, having been employ'd six Years in the Tarentine and Sicilian Wars.

Q. And what happened after the Retreat of Pyrrhus?

A. The Romans having defeated the Tarentines and Samnites, the Conquer'd were obliged to submit to the Conquerors; so they entered into an Alliance with those of Rome, in the Year 482.

Q. What farther Progress did the Romans make?

A. They attacked the Salentines, and at last the Punick War started up, which proved to be the longest and most dangerous War that the Romans had hitherto experienced.

The

*The first Punick War.**Year of the World 3790. Of Rome 490.**Q. WHEN began the first Punick War?**A. In the Year of Rome 490, two Years after the Return of Pyrrhus into Epirus.**Q. What occasioned it?**A. The Ambition and Jealousy of Carthage.**Q. Who were the Authors of this War?**A. The People of Messina on one side, and Hiero, King of Syracuse an Ally of Carthage, on the other.**Q. How came this about?**A. The King, in conjunction with the Carthaginians, declared War against the City of Messina; and the Romans resolving to succour the Messinians, because they had been always their good Friends, sent over an Army into Sicily, under the Conduct of Appius Claudius.**Q. What was the Success of it?**A. It was a long time uncertain, although the Carthaginians were Masters at Sea, and the Romans at Land.**Q. But which Side obtained the Victory in the mean time?**A. Appius Claudius, the Roman General, defeated Hiero; and having obliged him to demand a Peace, he obtained it upon easy Terms.**Q. What happened some time after?**A. Duilius put out to Sea.**Q. Was he not the first of the Romans that gained a naval Victory?**A. Yes.*

Q. About what time did this happen?

A. In the fifth Year of the War.

Q. After what manner?

A. The Galleys of the Carthaginians, which were light and nimble, were over-powered by those of the Romans, that were short and heavy; and by this means their Dexterity in managing their Oars was of no service to them, and their whole Fleet was either taken or sunk.

Q. What other remarkable Passages happen'd?

A. The Romans gain'd some other Advantages over the Enemy; but their Consul Catilinus was farrounded on every side in the Straits of Camirana, into which he was imprudently got, and was as happily delivered.

Q. By what means, and by whom was this effected?

A. By the Valour of Calphurnius Flamma, a Tribune, who with a Detachment of three hundred chosen Men, fell upon the Enemy's main Body which kept that Defile.

Q. What did the Carthaginians do in this Juncture?

A. They turn'd all their Forces immediately upon Calphurnius, and so the Romans had an opportunity to make their Escape out of this narrow Place.

Q. But how did Calphurnius's three hundred Men come off?

A. They were all cut in pieces.

Q. But did their Leader make a Shift to save himself?

A. Yes; but he was wounded in six or seven places.

Q. How

Q. How did this War conclude?

A. A second Engagement at Sea put an end to it.

Q. Who gain'd the Victory?

A. Caius Lutatius, in the twenty-third Year, near the Isle of *Ægates*; and this Victory put a Period to the War.

Q. Who commanded the Carthaginian Fleet?

A. Hanno was their Admiral.

Q. What were the Conditions of the Treaty of Peace?

A. That the Carthaginians should surrender *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, and all the other Isles that are between *Africk* and *Italy*, to the Romans; and that for twenty Years they should pay them twelve hundred Talents.

Q. Who signaliz'd himself in this War?

A. *Attilius Regulus*, who took *Tunis* and several other Cities belonging to the Carthaginians, and at last went to lay close Siege to *Carthage* itself.

Q. Without doubt this obliged the Carthaginians to sue for a Peace?

A. Right.

Q. And was Regulus willing to grant it?

A. Not unless it were upon very hard Conditions.

Q. When the Carthaginians saw that, what Course did they take?

A. They were necessitated to give the Command of the Army to *Xanthippus*, Captain of the *Lacedemonians*.

Q. What remarkable Transactions did this General perform?

A. He gave the Romans a great Overthrow,

kill'd thirty thousand upon the Place, and took fifteen thousand Prisoners, among whom was *Attilius Regulus*.

Q. In what Place was this Battle fought ?

A. Near Clupea.

Q. What did they do with Regulus ?

A. They sent him to Rome to treat with the Senate about the Exchange of Prisoners.

Q. And did he persuade the Romans to treat of a Peace ?

A. No : So far from it, that he endeavour'd as much as in him lay to hinder them from making one ; telling them the Affairs of Carthage were in a very bad Condition, and that they ought never to leave off till they had ruined them.

Q. What became of him then at his Return to Carthage ?

A. Having told them the Romans would by no means hearken to a Peace, unless they would submit to their Authority, the Carthaginians put him to death.

Q. What Torments did they make him endure ?

A. They shut him up in a Barrel stuck full of Nails, with the Points towards him.

Q. And thus the first Punick War was ended ?

A. Right ; after twenty three Years Losses on both sides.

Q. Was not the Temple of Janus shut soon after ?

A. Yes : the first time since Numa's Reign.

Q. Was it long before it was opened again ?

A. No : For the Romans were soon after obliged to fight against the Ligurians, the Liburnians, and the Insubrian Gauls, who were often beaten.

Q. By whom ?

A. The

A. The *Ligurians* and *Liburnians* by *Fulvius*, and the *Insubrian Gauls*, who had *Britomarus* to head them, by *Emilius*.

Q. Were not the *Gauls* likewise defeated by others?

A. *Flaminius* vanquished them when *Ariovistus* was their General; and they received another Overthrow from *Marcellus*, who slew their King *Viridomarus* with his own Hand.

The Second Punic War.

Year of the World 3814. Of Rome 514.

Q. WHEN did the second War begin?

A. Twenty-four Years after the first.

Q. What was the Occasion of the second War?

A. The Ambition of *Hannibal*, the Son of *Amilcar*. Besides, the *Carthaginians* grew now impatient of their twenty-four Years of Servitude, and of having paid a Tribute to the *Romans* for so long a time.

Q. How came *Hannibal* to forward it so mightily?

A. Because his Father, who carried him when he was but nine Years old into *Spain*, made him solemnly swear at the Foot of an Altar, never to be reconciled to the *Romans*.

Q. What happened during this War?

A. At the end of nine Years War, *Amilcar* was slain, and his Son-in-law *Asdrubal* set up in his room.

Q. What befel *Asdrubal* after this?

A. He was slain eight Years after in Battle, and *Hannibal* succeeded him.

Q. What

Q. What did Hannibal do when he saw himself General of the Carthaginians ?

A. Fearing lest the same Misfortune that happen'd to his Father *Amilcar*, and to *Asdrubal*, should attend him if he did not go upon some generous Expedition, he made himself Master of all the Provinces of *Spain*, that reached as far as the *Ebre*.

Q. And what did he next attempt ?

A. He made his Army march into the Territories of the *Oscades*, whom he reduced under his Obedience ; and soon after possess'd himself of all the Cities thereabout, but especially those belonging to the *Capertans* and the *Vacceans*.

Q. Whither did he shape his Course after this ?

A. He march'd to attack *Saguntum*, a City of *Spain*, and an Ally of the *Romans*.

Q. What did the Romans do upon this Occasion ?

A. They sent Ambassadors to *Carthage* to complain of the Injury that was done to the *Saguntines*, and of the Infraction of the Treaty of Peace by this means.

Q. What sort of an Answer was returned them ?

A. They were forc'd to return home, very ill satisfy'd with the Answer of the *Carthaginians*.

Q. What did the Saguntines do upon this Refusal ?

A. Harass'd with the continual Fatigues of a nine Month's Siege, and press'd by Famine, and Want of Provisions, they demanded to capitulate ; but *Hannibal* persisting to treat them with too much Indignity, they chose rather to perish, than

than to trust themselves in the Hands of so cruel a Man.

Q. And what did this People do, being thus reduced to Despair?

A. After they had buried their Gold and Silver in the Ground, they made a great Bonfire in the midst of the Town, into which the greatest part of the Garison leaped, and the rest were inhumanly killed.

Q. After the taking of this City, what did they do then?

A. They laid it level with the Ground.

Q. When the Romans heard of these Outrages, how were they affected?

A. They dispatch'd Ambassadors to Carthage, to know of them whether they approved of the Procedure of Hannibal.

Q. And how were they received?

A. Fabius, one of the Ambassadors, seeing them demur upon the Point, told them they had nothing to do but to chuse either Peace or War; and all of them crying out, *War! War!* the Ambassadors immediately departed.

Q. Whither did the Ambassadors go before they returned to Rome?

A. They visited Spain and Gaul, to desire the People of those Nations not to give Passage to the Carthaginians.

Q. Did they accomplish their Design?

A. No: For those of Spain being affrighted by the sad Example of Saguntum, and the Gauls by the great Success of Hannibal's Arms, they refused this Ambassy as a ridiculous Proposition.

Q. Where resided Hannibal?

A. He pass'd the Winter at New Carthage, then returned

returned to *Cales*, where after he had performed his Vows to *Hercules*, he renewed his antient Oath.

Q. What was it that instigated him to do it a gain?

A. An extraordinary Dream, which filled him with Joy, and put him upon the Resolution to march into *Italy* with his Army.

Q. And how did Hannibal employ himself before his arrival in *Italy*?

A. At first he made himself Master of the *Ilergetes*, the *Bargusians*, the *Ausetans*, and all *Aquitain*.

Q. Whither went he afterwards?

A. He passed the *Pyrenean Mountains*, then he marched thro' *Gaul*, notwithstanding the Opposition of the People, who were obliged to give way; at last he came to the Foot of the *Alps*.

Q. Did not Hannibal's Army find it a difficult matter to climb these Mountains?

A. 'Twas troublesome enough, as well for the height of the Rocks, which seemed to touch the Skies, as for the Snows, which made the Ways almost impracticable: Besides that the Inhabitants of the Hills were no small Impediment to them in their March.

Q. Did Hannibal then accomplish this vast Design?

A. Yes: For having with an undaunted Courage undertaken to climb the Hills, on the ninth Day he found himself on the top of them.

Q. When he was there, what did he make his Soldiers remark?

A. He shows 'em all *Italy*, lying at a great distance, bidding them look upon that vast Coun-

try

ry as the certain Recompence of their Toil and Labour.

Q. Was not Hannibal more perplexed to get down the Hills than he was in climbing up?

A. Right: For the Frost rendered the Ways every where so slippery, that there was no steady walking; besides, the Mountains were so steep in some Places, that there was scarce any other way of getting down, but by catching hold of the Twigs and Branches of Trees that grew between the Rocks.

Q. How then did they make a shift to reach the Valleys?

A. He made use of Fire, Iron, and Vinegar, to open a way thro' the Rocks; and thus having passed the Alps in the space of fifteen Days, he came into Italy with a hundred thousand Foot, and twenty thousand Horse.

Q. Where was it that Hannibal first gave Battle to the Romans?

A. Between the Po and the Ticinus.

Q. What was the Success of it?

A. The Roman Army was overcome.

Q. Who had the Command of it?

A. Scipio the Consul.

Q. Was he not wounded?

*A. Yes; and had certainly been taken by the Enemy, if the Valour of his Son, who was afterwards surnamed *Africanus*, had not forc'd him out of their hands.*

Q. When did Hannibal give the second Battle?

A. A short time after the first.

Q. Where was it fought?

A. At the River Trebia.

Q. How was the Event of it?

A. No

A. No happier for the *Romans* than the last *Sempronius* and his whole Army was there defeated, and *Hannibal* triumphantly pass'd the *Apennines*.

Q. What did *Hannibal* do the Year following?

A. He came into *Etruria*, after a March of four Days and three Nights in the midst of Bogs and Morasses, without reposing himself; which so fatigu'd him, that he lost an Eye.

Q. What happen'd to him after this?

A. 'Twas in this Place that *Flaminius* the Consul, a Man of great Rashness and Precipitation, fell into the Snares which *Hannibal* had laid for him; he was slain, and his Army put to the rout, near the Lake of *Thrasimene*.

Q. How many *Romans* lost their Lives in this Battle?

A. Near fifteen thousand slain, and ten thousand put to flight, and dispersed all over *Etruria*.

Q. Did not some remarkable Accidents happen after this Battle?

A. 'Tis reported that two Women lamenting their Children at one of the Gates of the City, whom they supposed to be dead, seeing 'em unexpectedly return'd, were so filled with Joy, that the Excess of it kill'd them.

Q. After this great Overthrow, what was done at *Rome*?

A. The People being assembled, consulted the Books of the *Sybils*, where they found, that all these Misfortunes were only owing to the Indignation of the God *Mars*.

Q. What Resolution did they form upon this Discovery?

A. They

A. They vow'd to celebrate a holy Spring ; and after that, in the Absence of the Consuls, the People created *Fabius Maximus* Dictator, and *Minutius Rufus* Master of the Horse.

Q. Where was Hannibal at that time ?

A. He was advanced as far as *Spoletum*, which obliged the two Consuls, *Emilius Paulus*, and *Terentius Varro*, to hasten with their Army.

Q. Where did the two Armies meet ?

A. Near *Cannæ*, a small Town situated in *Apulia* : Here did *Varro* put his Men in a Posture to receive the Enemies.

Q. Was this a bloody Fight ?

A. Yes : for there were near forty-five Thousand Romans slain, with fourscore Senators ; and *Paulus* the Consul himself was killed.

Q. What remarkable Passages happened in this Battle ?

A. The Consul *Paulus* having been wounded, was in the midst of the Hurry and Confusion found, covered with Blood and Dust, by a Colonel of the Army.

Q. What said this Officer to *Paulus*, seeing he was still alive ?

A. Take my Horse, and fly for yourself.

Q. And what Answer did *Paulus* make him ?

A. No, no ; use him your self, cries he with a dying Voice, and go to *Rome*, and bid the Senators from me fortify the Town before *Hannibal* comes to attack it.

Q. Did he say any thing else to him ?

A. Above all, tell *Fabius Maximus*, that I have lived, and that now I die, remembering his Orders and Counsels ; so leave me here to expire amidst this horrible Slaughter of the Romans.

Q. Did

Q. Did the Slaughter continue a long time?

A. So long, that *Hannibal* commanded his Soldiers to desist; and so great, that he sent to *Carthage* three Bushels of Golden Rings taken from the Fingers of the Roman Knights that were killed.

Q. What happened after the Battle of Cannæ?

A. Some young Romans were debating amongst themselves to abandon *Italy*.

Q. And had their Design like to have passed in the Assembly?

A. *Publius Cornelius Scipio*, a Colonel in the Army, who was after surnamed *Africanus*, drew out his Sword, and swore he would kill the Man who would not take an Oath never to go out of *Rome*.

Q. Did not the Romans desire a Peace?

A. No: They were so far from demanding a Peace of the *Carthaginians*, that receiving Advice that the Consul *Varro*, whose Rashness was in part the Cause of that cruel Loss, was on his way home, all the City went out to meet him to thank him, because he had not despaired of the Safety of the Common-wealth.

Q. What did they say of Hannibal?

A. That if he had known how to make use of a Victory, as well as he did how to get one, *Rome* had been utterly ruined.

Q. Where was Hannibal then?

A. Near *Capua*, which he reduced under his Obedience, as well as a great part of *Italy*.

Q. Had he always the better on't?

A. No: For *Capua* proved as fatal to him as *Cannæ* had been to the Romans.

Q. How came that about?

A. Because

A. Because he and his Army abandoned themselves to the Effeminacies and Pleasures of that Place, and staid a long time there; so that he never thought of pursuing his Conquests; which gave the Romans time to take breath again.

Q. What did the Romans do in this Exigence?

A. All the Roman Youths, the Magistrates, nay, even the Slaves, took up Arms.

Q. What did Fabius Maximus do in the mean time?

A. He endeavoured by Delays and Amusements to weaken Hannibal.

Q. What did the Romans attempt with their Army?

A. They laid Siege to Capua.

Q. Was Hannibal idle?

A. No: Thinking to make them raise the Siege, he marched directly towards Rome.

Q. And what happened to him?

A. A sudden Tempest arising, just as he was going to fight Fulvius, he was obliged to return back without fighting.

Q. Was it long before Capua surrender'd?

A. No.

Q. How did the Romans use them?

A. They took away all their Privileges.

Q. What followed after the taking of Capua?

A. Asdrubal going to join his Brother Hannibal, who lay then in Apulia with a powerful Army, was defeated by the Consuls, Claudius Nero and Livius Salinator.

Q. After this Battle, what did Nero do?

A. He caused Asdrubal's Head to be thrown into the Carthaginian Camp; which Hannibal seeing,

seeing, he immediately cried out, I perceive my self now to be unfortunate.

Q. *What was Scipio doing in Africk in the mean time?*

A. He cut in pieces Hanno's Army, the General of the Carthaginians; and took Prisoner Syphax, King of of Numidia, who had quitted the Romans, and taken the side of the Carthaginians.

Q. *Wherefore did Scipio pass into Africk?*

A. 'Twas done with a Design to remove Hannibal out of Italy,

Q. *And did it succeed?*

A. Yes.

Q. *What did Hannibal do before he left Italy?*

A. He exercis'd a thousand Cruelties in the Towns that continued still in his Power; nay, he order'd all the *Italians* that were in his Army to be massacred.

Q. *What happen'd upon Hannibal's arrival in Aick?*

A. A bloody Battle was fought near Zama.

Q. *On which side did the Victory fall?*

A. Hannibal being defeated by Scipio, despaired of retrieving his Fortune there, and so fled into Asia.

Q. *The Carthaginians being thus vanquished, what became of them?*

A. They were obliged to submit to the Peace allowed them by the Romans.

Q. *What Name was it that Scipio obtained by this Expedition?*

A. That of *Africanus*.

Q. *How did Hannibal's death come to be known?*
A. He called himself to be thrown into the Carthaginian Camp; which Hannibal seeing

*The War of Macedonia.**Year of the World 3850.**Of Rome 550.**Q. WHEN did the Macedonian War begin?**A. A little after the Peace of Carthage, in the Year of Rome 550.**Q. For what Reasons did the Romans undertake this War?**A. As well for the antient Quarrel they had to Philip, King of Macedonia, for joining with Hannibal when he was Master of Italy, as for the several Complaints their Allies, and especially the Athenians, made of him.**Q. Who first opened the War?**A. King Philip.**Q. How did he begin it?**A. By the Siege of Abydos.**Q. What became of the Inhabitants of that Place?**A. Philip reduced them to such an Extremity, that, after the Example of the Saguntines, they chose to kill themselves.**Q. Was Philip always thus successful?**A. No: for four Years after he was defeated by Flaminius at the † Cynocephale in Thessaly.**Q. Did Philip lose abundance of Men there?**A. He lost thirteen Thousand, reckoning the Dead and the Prisoners.**Q. Was a Peace granted to him at last?**A. Yes: on condition that he would lay no more Pretensions to any of the Cities of Greece.*

† So called from resembling a Dog's Head.

Q. The Liberty of Greece then was the Price of this Victory?

A. Right; for all the Cities of Greece, except Sparta, were free.

Q. Was that City always in a servile Condition?

A. No: For in the Year 561, Philopœmen having kill'd the Tyrant Nabis, made them associate with the Achæans.

The War of Antiochus.

Year of the World 3862.

Of Rome 562.

Q. WHEN begun the War of Antiochus against the Romans?

A. In the Year of Rome 562.

Q. What made him declare War against them?

A. He was instigated to it by Hannibal, who was then a Refugee in his Court.

Q. And how came he off?

A. Having been beaten both by Land and Sea, as well by the Consul Lucius Scipio, Brother to him surnamed Africanus, as by the Courage and good Conduct of his Brother, he was forced to beg a Peace.

Q. On what Terms was it given him?

A. That he would quit all the Places on this side Mount Taurus.

Q. Did not Lucius Scipio for this Exploit merit the Name of Asiaticus?

A. You are in the right.

*The Second Macedonian War.**Year of the World 3883. Of Rome 583.*

Q. *WHAT* did Philip King of Macedonia do all this while ?

A. He wholly employ'd himself in making Preparations for a new War.

Q. *Had* this Philip any Children ?

A. He had two, whose Names were *Perfes* and *Demetrius*. This last was given in Hostage to the *Romans*, who entertained him very respectfully.

Q. *Were* there no Divisions between the Brothers ?

A. Yes ; and so managed, that their Father Philip put *Demetrius* to death, whom the Jealousy of *Perfes*, and the kind Treatment he received at *Rome*, had render'd suspicious to him.

Q. *What* was the Consequence of all this ?

A. The Year following, *Perfes*, who inherited the Hatred and Designs of his Father against the *Romans*, declared War against them.

Q. *What* was the Success of this War ?

A. *Æmilius* the Roman General entirely defeated *Perfes* in the Year 586.

Q. *How* many Macedonians lost their Lives upon this Occasion ?

A. There were thirty thousand of them slain.

Q. *How* did this War conclude ?

A. With the final Destruction of the Kingdom of Macedonia.

Q. *Did* *Perfes* continue there ?

D

A. No ;

A. No; he engaged himself in the Interests of *Gentius*, King of *Illyrium*, who met with the same Destiny.

Q. How did that happen?

A. He was overcome by *Anicius* the Pretor: And the same Year both *Anicius* and *Æmilius* triumphed at *Rome*, one over *Gentius*, and the other over *Perfes*; and each King marched before the Chariot of his Conqueror.

Q. In what Year did this fall out?

A. In the Year 587 of *Rome*. Thus *Macedonia* and *Illyrium* were reduced into the Form of Provinces.

Q. After these mighty Victories, no-body, I suppose, thought it dishonourable to submit to the Romans?

A. No: For after the Defeat of *Antiochus*, and the Reduction of *Macedonia*, several Kings and Nations strove, and were ambitious, to be under them.

Q. Among these Kings, were there not some who shewed themselves more forward than the rest?

A. There were two, *Eumenes*, King of *Asia*, and *Prusias*, King of *Bitthynia*, surnamed the Hunter; but *Eumenes* was suspected of some underhand dealing.

Q. What was that?

A. To have secretly favoured the Party of *Perfes*.

Q. What Method did he take to clear himself of that Suspicion?

A. He sent his Brother *Attalus* to *Rome*, who had begg'd his Brother's Kingdom for himself, if a Physician appointed to bear him Company in this Journey had not hinder'd his Design.

Q. And

Q. And what did Prusias on his side to engage the Romans to support him?

A. He scandalously flatter'd them, having caused some Medals to be coin'd in honour of the Senate, which he treated as a Divinity, and of the Senators, whom he call'd his Tutelar Gods.

The Third Punick War.

Year of the World 3905.

Of Rome 605.

Q. W H E N did this third Punick War begin?

A. In the Year of Rome 605.

Q. What gave Occasion to it?

A. 'Twas because the Carthaginians violated the Articles of Peace, and declared War against Masinissa, who was an Ally of the Romans.

Q. And what Resolutions did the Senate make hereupon?

A. 'Twas unanimously decreed to follow the Advice of Cato the Censor, which was to destroy the City of Carthage entirely.

Q. And to effect it, what Measures were taken?

A. Censorinus and Manilius the Consuls marched directly to the City.

Q. What did the Carthaginians to avert the Storm?

A. They sent Deputies to them to know what Satisfaction it was they demanded.

Q. What Answer was returned them?

A. That it was the Will and Pleasure of the Senate that they should demolish their City even to the Foundations, and remove themselves at least ten Miles from the Sea.

Q. So harsh a Proposition how did it relish with the high Spirits of the Carthaginians?

A. It possess'd them with so vigorous an Indignation, that they made a much greater Resistance than could be expected from so feeble an Enemy.

Q. And what was the Result of all?

A. In the fourth Year of this War Carthage was taken by Publius Cornelius Scipio, who burnt and wholly destroy'd it.

The War of Corinth.

Year of the World 3907.

Of Rome 607.

Q. FOR what Reason did the Romans declare War against the People of Corinth?

A. Because of their ill Treatment of the Roman Ambassadors, as also because they brought over the Achæans to their own Party.

Q. How did their Affairs succeed?

A. They were defeated by the Pretor Metellus in two Battles, near the Thermopylæ, and in Phocis, in the Year of Rome 607.

Q. And what was the Destiny of Corinth?

A. Mummius the Consul, after he had made himself Master of all Achaia, order'd Corinth, the Capital City of that Nation, to be burnt down to the Ground.

Q. What remarkable Matter happened in the burning of it?

A. Different Metals being melted together, accidentally formed the famous Corinthian Brass, on which the Romans set a higher value than Silver, and which in succeeding Times was imitated by

by a mixture of several Metals, on which they bestowed the same Name.

The War of Portugal.

Year of the World 3908.

Of Rome 608.

Q. WHO occasioned the War at Portugal?

A. A Prince whose Name was *Viriatu*s, who had usurped the Sovereignty of that Country.

Q. By whom was that Country retaken?

A. By *Quintus Fabius*.

Q. What did they do to *Viriatu*s?

A. They made a Peace with him.

Q. And after the Treaty was ratified, what became of him then?

A. The Year following, *Scipio* the Consul, without having any regard to the Treaty, fell suddenly upon *Viriatu*s, and treacherously put him to death.

The Destruction of Numantia.

The Year of the World 3913.

Of Rome 613.

Q. WHEN did the Ruin of Numantia begin?

A. Sixteen Years after that of *Carthage*; the very same *Scipio* who had destroyed that famous City, and thence acquir'd the Name of *Africanus*, went to besiege *Numantia*.

Q. What incited *Scipio* to be angry with them?

A. The *Numantians* had refused to surrender to the *Romans* some Rebels who had taken shelter among them.

Q. And how did they behave themselves ?

A. Tho' they were inferior in number to the Enemy, yet for nine Years together they resisted the whole Power of Rome ; nay, they fatigued and harass'd two or three of their Armies.

Q. But at last how went their Affairs ?

A. Scipio, the Destroyer of Carthage, having set down before the Town, shut up the Besieged within their own Walls, where they all killed themselves out of Despair.

Q. And what became then of the City of Numantia ?

A. It was raz'd to the ground ; and thus all Spain became a Province of the Romans.

Q. What other considerable Action did the Romans about this Time perform ?

A. They made themselves Masters of Macedonia the third time.

Q. What was he who had possess'd that Kingdom for some Years before ?

A. His Name was Andrisus, a sorry, obscure, pitiful Fellow, who pretending to be the Son of Perseus, had enter'd that Kingdom with very considerable Forces in the Year 605.

Q. Did he continue long in the possession of this Kingdom ?

A. No ; for the Year following he was defeated by Cecilius Metellus the Pretor, who kill'd him Twenty-five Thousand Men. This Victory made him take the Name of Macedonicus.

The

*The War of the Slaves, and others,
about the same Time.*

Year of the World 3921 Of Rome 621.

Q *WHO was the Chief of these Slaves that
excited the War?*

*A. Ennus a Syrian by Birth, who counterfeit-
ing a Divine Revelation, encouraged his Brother
Slaves to revolt.*

Q *How many of these Slaves did he muster in a
Body together?*

A. About Seventy Thousand.

Q *And what memorable Exploits did he per-
form?*

*A. He defeated four Roman Pretors; but in the
Year 622 he was vanquished by the Consul Ru-
pilius.*

Q *What remarkable thing happened in the Year
621?*

*A. Attalus died, and by Testament left the Peo-
ple of Rome his Heirs.*

Q *Did not this Alienation make some Male-
contents at home?*

*A. Yes; for it so happen'd that Aristonicus,
Natural Son to Eumenes, being discontented at this
Procedure, possess'd himself of Asia, and cut in pic-
ces the Army of the Pretor Crassus.*

Q *This Aristonicus, I suppose, was not always
victorious in the Field?*

*A. No; for in the Year 624 he was vanquish-
ed by the Consul Perperna.*

Q *Was not the above mentioned Year remark-
able for something else?*

A. Right ; for the Death of the second *Africanus*, who was found dead in his Bed, his Wife being suspected to have poisoned him.

Q. Did not the Romans signalize their Valour upon some new Occasion ?

A. In the Year 629 they first attack'd the Inhabitants of *Gallia Transalpina*, and begun with the *Salians* and *Allobroges*.

Q. Who put a Period to that War ?

A. *Fabius* the Consul, by defeating *Bituitus*, King of the *Arverni*, in a pitch'd Battle.

Q. How many Men did the King lose in this Action ?

A. About twenty six thousand. The Battle was fought near *Isera* ; and 'twas at this time that *Gallia Narbonensis* was reduced to the Condition of a Roman Province.

The War against Jugurtha.

The Year of the World 3943. Of Rome 643.

Q. **WHAT** was the Original of this War ?

A. 'Twas because *Jugurtha*, King of *Numidia*, Bastard Son of *Micipsa*, had ravished the Kingdom from the two legitimate Children of the King his Father, and unjustly dispossest'd them of it.

Q. What did *Micipsa's* Children do in this Exigence ?

A. They implor'd the Assistance of the Roman People, who immediately declared War against *Jugurtha*.

Q. And who carried the Victory ?

A. *Ju-*

A. Jugurtha ; but he defeated the *Romans* rather by his private Liberalities, than by the Force of his Arms.

Q. But did he still prevail ?

A. No ; Metellus the Consul, who was a Man not to be bribed against the Interest of his Country, was sent against him, and had the better of him in several Engagements.

Q. What other ill Successes attended Jugurtha ?

A. Marius completed his Destruction, and at last he was delivered into the Hands of his Conqueror through the Treachery of *Bocchus*, King of *Mauritania*.

Q. And what became of Jugurtha then ?

A. He was carried Prisoner to *Rome*, and after he had served to adorn the Triumph of *Marius*, died in his Confinement.

Q. When did that happen ?

A. In the Year 647, about the Time when Cicero was born.

Q. Did Marius perform any more considerable Exploits ?

A. Some time after this, in his fourth Consulship, he exterminated the Teutones and the Ambrones.

Q. Did he do any thing else to immortalize his Name ?

A. He, together with Catulus, defeated the Cimbrians, who had designed to force their way into Italy.

Q. How many of the Enemies were slain ?

A. There were Twenty-six Thousand kill'd, and Sixty Thousand taken Prisoners.

The War against Mithridates.

Year of the World 3960.

Of Rome 660.

Q. WHEN began this War?

A. About the Year of Rome 660.

Q. Who was this Mithridates?

A. King of Pontus.

Q. Why did the Romans make War against him?

A. Because he had turn'd out Ariobarzanes, King of Cappadocia, and Nicomedes King of Bithynia, and possess'd himself of their Dominions.

Q. What Method did these two Princes take to be re-established in their Kingdoms?

A. As they were Allies of the Romans, they demanded Assistance from Sylla, who at that time was Pretor.

Q. And did Sylla take their part?

A. He immediately took up Arms, and having ejected the Usurper by Force, he restored Ariobarzanes and Nicomedes to their own Countries again.

Q. But how did Mithridates bear this Ejection?

A. He employ'd all his Efforts so successfully, that he turn'd them out the second time one after the other; but they were again re-established by the Authority of the Senate.

Q. Was not Mithridates somewhat daunted to see himself attack'd by Nicomedes and the Romans?

A. Far

A. Far from that: He levied a mighty Army, and enter'd Cappadocia and Bithynia.

Q. What did he particularly do in the Kingdom of Bithynia?

A. He defeated the Roman Army, and on a Day appointed order'd all the Italians that were in Asia to be massacred.

Q. Did he make any further Advances?

A. He made himself Master of Macedonia, Thrace, and Greece.

Q. Did not the Romans endeavour to stop the Progress of his Conquests?

A. Sylla, who was then Proconsul, parted from Rome to hinder his Designs. He immediately recover'd Athens out of his hands, and afterwards compelled him to make a Peace; in pursuance of which, he was to abandon Asia, Bithynia, and Cappadocia.

Q. Did Mithridates stir no more?

A. Some Years after he renewed the War in Asia; but Lucullus the Consul beat him both by Land and by Sea.

Q. Whither did he retire after this Overthrow?

A. At first he resided in his Kingdom of Pontus, but finding himself still pursued by Lucullus, he was obliged to take Sanctuary in Armenia, and beg the Protection of Tigranes.

Q. And did Lucullus still march after him?

A. Having follow'd him into this Country, he there defeated the two Kings, whose Army consisted of Two Hundred Thousand Foot, and Sixty Thousand Horse.

Q. What were the Effects of this Battle?

A. The taking of *Nisiba*, and *Tigranocetta*, the Capital City of *Armenia*.

Q. Was not *Lucullus* gloriously recompensed for all these Heroick Actions?

A. No; for his Soldiers refusing to stand by him, he was forced to give way to *Pompey*, who had the Management of this War devolved upon him after *Lucullus*.

Q. What remarkable Exploits did this new General perform?

A. He join'd the *Iberians* and *Albanians* to the Roman Empire, as he pursued *Mithridates*.

Q. What was the End of that unfortunate Prince?

A. Seeing himself press'd hard on every side, he was thinking to make the best of his way into *Gaul*, and shelter himself there; but the Revolt of his Son *Pharnaces*, together with that of his Army, fully compleated his Ruin.

Q. After what manner died he?

A. He endeavour'd ineffectually to dispatch himself by Poison; and after several vain Attempts to hasten Death that way, was forced to stab himself. Historians frequently mention him for his great Skill in Languages; and an Antidote of his own Invention still bears his Name.

Q. When did this War fully terminate?

A. In the Year 691, under *Cicero's* Consulate, after it had lasted forty Years.

The Civil War between Marius and Sylla.

The Year of the World 3966. *Of Rome* 666.

Q. WHAT was the Cause of the Civil War between *Marius* and *Sylla*?

A. Am-

A. Ambition on both sides.

Q. What stands Marius charged with?

A. He procures the Command of the Army design'd against *Mithridates* for himself, by the means of *Sulpitius* the Tribune, who by his own Authority had taken it away from *Sylla*.

Q. And what did *Sylla* for his part?

A. Enraged at this Usage, he enters *Rome* with an Army, puts to death *Sulpitius* the Author of this whole Intrigue, and beats out *Marius*, who thereupon fled into *Africk*.

Q. What became of *Marius*?

A. Having got Men enow together to make a small Army, he went to join *Cinna*, who was ejected out of *Rome* by *Octavius*, his Collegue.

Q. And what happened to him afterwards?

A. *Sertorius* and *Carbo* having likewise joined these two great Men with abundance of their Friends, they resolved all four to march directly towards *Rome*.

Q. When they had entered the City, what did they do?

A. They made a terrible Slaughter there.

Q. After this cruel Revenge was over, what does *Marius* next?

A. He gets himself to be declared Consul now the seventh time, and dies the Year following.

Q. When *Marius* was dead, what Measures did *Sylla* take?

A. Having concluded a Peace with *Mithridates*, he came back into *Italy* in the Year 672, and after he had vanquish'd *Carbo Norbanus*, and *Marius* the younger, enters *Rome*, and makes himself be created Dictator.

Q. Being

Q. Being elevated to this Dignity, how did he behave himself?

A. He in his turn banishes all those of the contrary Party, sends back the greatest part of the Senators, but especially Sertorius, and proscribes so great a Number of them, that 'tis said they amounted to Two Thousand.

Q. After all this Havock and Destruction, what became of Sylla?

A. He resigned the Dictatorship at the End of three Years.

Q. And was not that very acceptable to the People of Rome?

A. They were so well pleas'd at it, that when he died the Year following, they order'd a most magnificent Funeral for him.

A. Were no considerable Persons of Marius's Party remaining?

A. None but Sertorius, who had retir'd into Spain; but Metellus, assisted by Pompey, made War against him.

Q. And did the Event answer his Expectation?

A. He frequently fought him without any extraordinary Success to boast of, till being at last assassinated by his own People, Pompey in a short time reduc'd all Spain under the Obedience of the Romans.

The taking of Jerusalem.

Year of the World 3991. Of Rome 691.

Q. AFTER Pompey, in conjunction with Crassus, had defeated the Slaves that rebell'd, and had

had clear'd the Seas of Pirates, what did he do next

A. He march'd into Judea to determine some Difference which arose between the two Brothers, *Aristobulus* and *Hyrcanus*, concerning the Kingdom of Judea.

Q. What did he there?

A. Having been ill received by *Aristobulus*, he took Jerusalem by Force, and made them level the Walls of it.

Q. What was remarkable during the Siege?

A. He had so great a Respect for the Temple, that he prohibited his Soldiers to touch the least thing belonging to that Sacred Place.

Q. And what did he do afterwards?

A. He makes Judea a Tributary Province of the Empire, set *Hyrcanus* on the Throne, and carried the proud *Aristobulus* chain'd and bound, to set off the Triumph which he celebrated at Rome.

The War between Cæsar and Pompey.

Year of the World 3993. Of Rome 693.

Q. **W**HAT was the principal Cause of this War?

A. 'Twas Ambition occasion'd all those Calamities which the Roman Empire suffer'd during the Course of this War.

Q. How happen'd it?

A. Pompey, Cæsar, and Crassus, seeing themselves to be the most powerful Men of the Republick, made a League together, and so concerted Matters, that the Administration of all Affairs wholly

wholly rested on them. This Government was commonly called the *Triumvirate*.

Q. What did Cæsar do to confirm this Treaty?

A. He gave his Daughter in Marriage to Pompey.

Q. How did they share the Empire between them?

A. Cæsar took the Government of Gaul, Pompey that of Spain, Crassus that of Syria, which he therefore demanded, because he expected to make great Advantages of that rich Province.

Q. After they had thus divided it, what did they do next?

A. Cæsar and Crassus went each of them to their Government; Pompey staid at Rome, and contented himself to send his Lieutenants into Spain.

Q. Which was Crassus's first Action in Syria?

A. He pillaged the Temple of Jerusalem, and carried away all its Riches.

Q. Was he not soon after punished for this Sacrilege?

A. Yes; for in an Expedition against the Parthians, he was entirely defeated by Surena, General of their Army.

Q. What happen'd to him in this Battle?

A. He lost the greatest part of his Men there; his own Son was slain: and having the misfortune himself to fall into the hands of the Enemy, they cut off his Head; which being carried to Orodes, King of the Parthians, he caus'd his Mouth to be opened, and pouring some melted Gold into it, said, *Now satisfy thyself with Gold; of which thou hast always been so desirous.*

Q. What did Orodes mean by so doing?

A. He

A. He only laugh'd at his Avarice, which influenced him to undertake that War.

Q. After Crassus was dead, how did Cæsar and Pompey order Matters ?

A. Pompey not enduring to bear an Equal, nor Cæsar a Superior, they mutually envied one another.

Q. What Measures did Pompey take ?

A. He prevail'd with the Senate to recall Cæsar from his Government as soon as his Time was expired, and to disband his Army.

Q. And did Cæsar comply with these Instructions ?

A. As he rightly apprehended that his Conquest of Gaul had created him several Enemies, and very well saw whither this tended, he sent them word that he was resolved to put himself in a Condition to defend himself against his Enemies ; and that he would not dismiss his Army, unless they would oblige Pompey to do the same.

Q. How did they receive this Proposal ?

A. They would not hearken to it, which obliged him to assemble all his Forces together, and march immediately towards Rome.

Q. Did not Pompey endeavour to hinder his March ?

A. Cæsar's sudden Expedition so affrighted him and his whole Party, that they soon abandon'd Rome and Italy, and pass'd into Greece.

Q. What did Cæsar do in the mean time ?

A. He enter'd Rome, plunder'd the publick Treasury ; and after he had staid a short time there to compose the Tumults of the City, he went into Spain, and beat Afranius and Petreius,

treius, Pompey's two Lieutenants, out of the Country.

Q. As he returned, what did he do?

A. He made himself Master of Marseilles, and entering Rome the second time, he took possession of the Dictatorship, which the Pretor Lepidius had procur'd to be confer'd upon him in his Absence.

Q. What did he afterwards?

*A. He pass'd over into Greece to find out Pompey, and having besieged him near *Dyrrachium in Albania, he was so rudely received, and his Army beaten after such a manner, that if Pompey had known how to make the best use of his Victory, Caesar, even by his own Confession, had been entirely defeated.*

Q. Where did Caesar march after this small Overthrow?

A. He got his Troops together, and march'd towards Thessaly.

Q. Did any remarkable Action happen there?

A. Yes: For Pompey having pursued him thither, they fought in the Plains of Pharsalia.

Q. On which Side fell the Victory?

A. Pompey's Army was totally routed. As for himself he fled towards Egypt to Ptolemy, who was then very young.

Q. What happened to Pompey?

A. As soon as 'twas known at Court that he was ready to land, Theodosius perswaded the King to murder him, in order to engage Caesar to leave him in the quiet Possession of his Kingdom.

** Durazzo.*

Q. And

Q. And did Ptolemy suffer himself to be so persuaded?

A. Yes: For he immediately sent Achilles and Septimius to receive and compliment him on his part; and when they had him alone in a Cock-boat, they immediately assassinated him in the very sight of the Vessel where his Wife and Children were.

Of Seditions.

Years of Rome 261, 303, 377.

Q. WHAT were the Causes of all those Seditions that so often threatened the Commonwealth?

A. The Ambition, Pride and Insolence of the Tribunes.

Q. How many of them have you observed in History?

A. Five principal ones.

Q. When did the first begin?

A. In the Year 261.

Q. What occasion'd it?

A. The Tyranny of the Usurers.

Q. How happened that?

A. The People being no longer able to endure their Cruelty, which proceeded so far as to treat them like Slaves, retired in Arms to the sacred Hill: But being appeased by the seasonable Discourse of Menenius Agrippa, who entertained them with the Fable of the Belly and the other Members, they returned to Rome.

Q. What Privilege did they then extort before they came back?

A. They

A. They obtained certain Magistrates to defend the People against the Violence of the Senators.

Q. How were these Magistrates called?

A. *Tribuni Plebis*, or the Tribunes.

Q. When began the Second Sedition?

A. In the Year 303.

Q. What occasion'd it?

A. The arbitrary and unlimited Power of the *Decemviri*.

Q. How came it about?

A. When these *Decemviri*, or ten Men, who were chosen by the People to reduce the Laws they brought from Greece into one Body, had fully comprized them in the *Duodecim Tabulae*, they still kept up and maintained that Authority which was only delegated to them for the Execution of this Design.

Q. What is remarked of Appius Claudius, one of these *Decemviri*?

A. That his Insolence proceeded so far as to endeavour to carry off *Virginia*, with a Design to ravish her.

Q. What became then of *Virginia*?

A. *Virginius*, the Father of this young Woman, kill'd her with his own Hand in the *Forum*, as *Claudius* would have had her dragged off, after he had declared her his Slave.

Q. What Effects did this produce?

A. It stirred up all the People against the *Decemviri*.

Q. What did they do to them?

A. They put them all in Prison.

Q. What occasion'd the third Sedition?

A. It

A. It happened upon the Subject of Marriages, the People being resolved it should be lawful for them to marry with the *Patricians*.

Q. Where did this Tumult break out ?

A. In the *Janiculum*, by the Management of *Canuseius*, Tribune of the People.

Q. When did the fourth Sedition begin ?

A. In the Year of Rome 377.

Q. What was the Cause of it ?

A. Ambition of Honours.

Q. Wherefore ?

A. Because the People would be admitted to publick Employments, as well as the Nobility.

Q. How did that happen ?

A. *Lucius Stolo* and *Lucius Sextus*, Tribunes of the People, having preferred a Law, which ordained that one of the Consuls should be always chosen out of the *Plebeians*, the Senators opposed it with all their Authority.

Q. And the Tribunes on their side, what did they ?

A. They hindred the making of any Curule Magistrate, so that there was a sort of Anarchy in Rome for the Space of five Years.

Q. Which of them carried the Point at last ?

A. The People ; and *Lucius Sextus* was the first that was chosen out of their Body.

Q. What was the Cause of the fifth Sedition ?

A. The *Gracchi* occasioned it by their endeavouring to re-establish the *Agrarian Law*.

Q. How did that happen ?

A. *Tiberius Gracchus* being desirous to obtain the Good-will of the People, demanded to have the above-mentioned Law put in execution.

Q. What was the Intent of that Law ?

A. All

A. All the Citizens of Rome were by it forbidden to possess in Land above five hundred Acres.

Q. And what was their Design in getting it restored?

A. To enjoin all those that possess'd any more, to give their Lands up, and distribute them among the People.

Q. Did not all the Nobility vigorously oppose it?

A. Yes: But 'twas to no purpose, for this Law was authorized by the Senate.

Q. And what did he do afterwards?

A. He made his Colleague *Octavius* quit his Office, because he would have stopped the Execution of this Law.

Q. What happen'd to him at last?

A. This good Success having rendered him insupportably proud, *Scipio Nasica* caused him to be assassinated, as he came out of the Capitol.

Q. Was not his Death revenged?

A. *Caius Gracchus*, his Brother, in order to effect it, promises the People to get them all that Wealth which *Attalus* at his Death bequeathed to the Romans: The Senate was so highly provoked at his Arrogance, that they offered the Weight of it in Gold to any one that should bring his Head.

Q. What then became of *Caius Gracchus*?

A. He got one of his Slaves to kill him, finding himself pursued by the Consul *Opimius*; and he that found his Body cut off his Head, took out his Brains, and filled it with melted Lead, to make it weigh the more.

Q. Besides

Q. Besides these five Seditions, do you observe no more?

A. Yes.

Q. Inform me concerning them.

A. Posthumius refusing his Soldiers the Pillage of Volæ, which he had promised them, a Sedition arose in the Camp, where he was stoned to death.

Q. What other Seditions can you recount to me?

A. Under Appius Claudius the Roman Army would not vanquish that of the Enemies, altho' it lay in their power. There happened several little Mutinies, that don't deserve to be particularly mentioned.

Q. Give me some Instance of the Distrust or Jealousy of the Romans.

A. They were so jealous of having the least Invasion made upon their Liberty, that they often sent the most illustrious of the Nobility into Banishment, whenever they suspected that they designed to arrogate too much Power to themselves.

Q. Pray give an Example of it.

A. There was in the first place Coriolanus banish'd for having served them too well, and Camillus was sent abroad for the same Reason.

Q. Wherefore do they say Camillus was exiled?

*A. Because the People were possessed with an Imagination that this great Man had not equitably divided the Booty, taken from the *Vejentes*, between them and the Army; so they believed he had a Design to secure himself of the Hearts of the Soldiers, in order to enslave the People.*

Q. Give me one other Demonstration, I beseech

seech you, that the Romans were so jealous of their Liberty ?

A. They put *Spurius Cassius* and *Spurius Maelius* to death, because they suspected them: the first for endeavouring to revive the *Lex Agraria*, the second for his Largeesses or Donatives to the People.

Q. Who kill'd *Spurius Cassius* ?

A. 'Twas his own Father that executed Justice upon him: and as for the other, *Servilius Ahala*, General of the Horse, kill'd him in the midst of the *Forum* by the Order of *Quintius Cincinnatus*.

Q. And *Manlius*, how died he ?

A. He was thrown headlong from the Top of that very *Capitol* which he had so generously defended.

Q. For what Reason ?

A. Because having delivered several poor Debtors from the Clutches of their Creditors, 'twas observed he carried himself too high, and did not contain himself within the Bounds of a private Citizen.

Q. How many Roman Generals do you observe there were that killed the Generals of the Enemies Army with their own Hands ?

Q. Three ; viz. *Romulus*, who killed *Acron* King of the *Cecinians* ; *Cornelius Cossus*, who killed *Tolumnius* King of the *Vejentes* ; and *Marcellus*, who slew *Viridomarus* King of the *Insubrian Gauls*.

Q. Recount to me the Actions of *Curtius*.

A. In the Year 395, a Gulf appeared in the middle of the *Forum* ; and as 'twas impossible to fill it up, altho' they threw in ever so much Wood,
and

and Stones, and Earth, they had recourse to the Augurs.

Q. And what Answer did they give them?

A. That it would never close again till the most precious thing in *Rome* was thrown into it. Now as they were strangely perplexed to find it out, *Marcus Curtius* mounted on Horse-back, and all in Armour rode into it, saying, That nothing was more precious than Arms and Military Virtue.

Q. What was the Design of Catiline's Conspiracy?

A. To kill *Cicero*, who was Consul, to set the City on fire at the four Corners, to plunder, and make himself Master of it: but this Plot was happily discovered.

Q. Who was concerned in this Affair?

A. *Lentulus* and *Cethegus*, with several other Senators.

Q. After this Conspiracy was discovered, what became of Catiline?

A. He was condemned to depart out of *Rome*, so he withdrew towards his Army.

Q. What was done to the other Conspirators?

A. They were all put to death.

Q. What became of Catiline at last?

A. He was defeated, and his Army cut in pieces by *Petorius*, Lieutenant to *Antonius* the Consul, and himself killed upon the Place.



*A CHRONOLOGICAL TABLE of
the Emperors of Rome, from Julius
Cæsar to Honorius.*

IN the Year 705 of *Rome*, and 4005 of the
World, *Julius Cæsar* made himself Emperor,
and was assassinated in the Senate on the Ides of
March, 710. He was perpetual Dictator but three
Years, four Months, and six Days.

Augustus took the Empire in the Year 711 of
Rome; and in 724, after the Death of *Mark
Anthony*, he was sole Emperor, and thus held
the Empire 57 Years, and the Monarchy 43
Years. He died in the 14th Year of the Chri-
stian *Æra*.

<i>Anno Dom.</i>	<i>Roman Emperors who reigned.</i>	<i>Years</i>	<i>Mon.</i>	<i>Days</i>
14	<i>Tiberius</i>	22	6	
37	<i>Caligula</i>	3	10	8
41	<i>Claudius</i>	13	8	20
54	<i>Nero</i>	13	7	28
68	<i>Galba</i>		6	7
69	<i>Otho</i>		3	5
69	<i>Vitellius</i>		8	5
69	<i>Vespasian</i>	10		
79	<i>Titus</i>	2	2	2
81	<i>Domitian</i>	15		6

These are commonly called the Twelve *Cæsars*.

Here

Here follows the Catalogue of the rest.

Anno Dom.	Roman Emperors who reigned.	Years	Mon.	Days
96	Nerva	1	4	11
98	Trajan	19	6	15
117	Adrian	20	11	28
138	Antoninus Pius	22	6	40
161	Marcus Aurelius } L. Verus	19		10
180	Commodus	12	9	14
193	Pertinax		2	26
193	Julianus		2	5
193	Severus	17	8	3
211	Caracalla and Geta	6	2	5
217	Macrius and his Son	1	2	4
218	Heliogabalus	3	9	4
222	Alexander	13		9
235	Maximus and his Son	2		3
238	Pupienus and Balbinus		10	2
238	The Gordiani	6		
244	Philip and his Son	5		
249	Decius and his Son	3		
251	Gallus and Volusian } his Son	2	4	
254	Valerian	6		
259	Galienus	8		
268	Claudius II.	2		
270	Quintillus			15
270	Aurelian	5		
275	Tacitus		3	
275	Florianus		6	6
276	Probus	6	4	
282	Carus	1		

<i>Anno Dom.</i>	<i>Roman Emperors who reigned.</i>	<i>Years</i>	<i>Mon.</i>	<i>Days</i>
282	<i>Numerian slain in } the Year 284. }</i>			
282	<i>Carinus, slain in 285.</i>			
284	<i>Dioclesian</i>	20		
285	<i>Maximian</i>	18		
304	<i>Galerius and Con- } stantius }</i>	2	3	25
306	<i>Constantine the Great</i>	30	9	27
337	<i>Constantine, Con- } stants, and Con- } stantius, Brothers }</i>	25	5	13
361	<i>Julian the Apostate</i>	1	7	27
363	<i>Jovian</i>		7	22
364	<i>Valentinian the Great</i>		8	22
375	<i>Gratian</i>	7	9	21
388	<i>Valentinian II.</i>	8	8	12
392	<i>Theodosius the Great</i>		8	22
395	<i>Honorius</i>	28	7	

Julius

Julius Cæsar, the first Roman Emperor.

The Year of the World 4005. Of Rome 705.

Q. I Desire to be instructed in the Pedigree of Cæsar.

A. He was descended from one of the most ancient Families of Rome by his Mother's Side, and of the Kings of that City by his Father's.

Q. What was his Mother's Name?

A. Aurelia.

Q. Under whom did he learn the Military Art?

A. Under Marius.

Q. Where did he first carry Arms?

A. In Asia.

Q. What sort of a Reputation had he there?

A. A very bad one, occasioned by his Leudness.

Q. To whom did he particularly apply himself?

A. To Pompey and Crassus, as being the most capable to advance his Fortune, by reason of the great Interest they had in the Commonwealth.

Q. What was the first Office he was called to?

A. To be Ædile with Bibulus.

Q. What was the next?

A. He was Censor, and Pontifex Maximus, under the Consulate of Cicero.

Q. When was he made Pretor?

A. The Year following.

Q. At his going out of the Pretorship, what did he next?

A. He obtained the Government of Spain.

Q. And what did he do there?

A. He performed several Glorious Exploits which deserved Triumph; but he preferr'd the

Consulship to that Glory, and at last obtained it in the Year 695, by the Assistance of *Pompey* and *Crassus*, to whom he joined himself.

Q. Being advanced to that high Dignity, what did he ?

A. He distributed his Lands among the People of *Rome*.

Q. And what happen'd to him afterwards ?

A. By his Artifices and excessive Liberalities he so far established himself in the good Graces of the People, that he procured the Government of *Gaul* to be conferr'd upon him.

Q. When did he go to take Possession of it ?

A. In the Year 696.

Q. How long was he Governour there ?

A. Nine Years ; during which time he subdued all the Provinces that lie between the *Pyrenees*, the *Alps*, the *Rhine*, and the *Rhone*, and made them tributary to *Rome*.

Q. Was not he the first Roman that adventured to pass the Rhine ?

A. Yes ; and he built a Bridge over it, to go and give Battle to the *Germans* who were on the other side.

Q. What other remarkable Things did he perform ?

A. He made a Descent likewise upon *Britain*, which before him was unknown to the *Romans*.

Q. How often was Fortune contrary to him during these nine Years ?

A. Thrice : The first happen'd to him in *Britain*, where his Naval Forces had like to have been lost by a Tempest. The second in *Gaul*, where one of his Legions was entirely defeated. And the third upon the Frontiers of *Germany*, where his Lieutenants fell into an Ambuscade, and were cut in pieces.

Q. Having

Q. Having placed good Governours in Britain and Gaul, what did he next?

A. He repass'd into Italy.

Q. And how was he received there?

A. Being at Lucca, the two Consuls, with above two hundred Senators, and four hundred Knights, went to congratulate him upon his great Conquests.

Q. What did he afterwards?

A. He demanded a Triumph, and the Consulship.

Q. Was it granted him?

A. No; for Pompey being jealous of Cæsar's Glory, so managed his Cabals, that they refused him both one and the other.

Q. How did Cæsar bear this?

A. The Person whom he sent to Rome to make this demand, sets his Hand to his Sword, and tells them, That what they refused him, that (meaning his Sword) should give him.

Q. What followed upon this?

A. Cæsar marches towards Rome, at the Head of his Army which had conquer'd the Gauls, and passes the Rubicon, a small River which parted that Government from Italy.

Q. What was done at Rome in the mean time?

A. Pompey gets Cæsar declared an Enemy to the Republick.

Q. And did this stop Cæsar's Career?

A. He continues his March to Rome, which was abandon'd by Pompey and his Party.

Q. Whither went Pompey?

A. To Brundisium, from whence he escapes by Night into Epirus, where he was pursued by Cæsar.

Q. Did not Cæsar repass the Adriatick alone in a Fisherman's Boat ?

A. Yes ; and when the Master began to despond of Safety, he cheer'd him with, Quid times ? Cæsarem vebis.

Q. Was there a Battle fought between them ?

A. At first Pompey had great Advantages over him, and had certainly ruined him if he had known how to have used his good Fortune.

Q. How then did he miscarry ?

A. Instead of protracting the War and starving his Enemy, which he might easily have done, he fights Cæsar at Pharsalia, where he was totally defeated in the Year 706. After this, he flies towards Egypt to King Ptolemy ; but before he reach'd the Shore, his Throat was cut in the Long-boat by Achillas and Septimius.

Q. Was it not in this Voyage that Cæsar became passionately in love with Cleopatra ?

A. Yes ; but her Brother Ptolemy, who thought to have obliged Cæsar everlastingly by dispatching of Pompey, finding himself not so well received as he expected —

Q. Resolved to destroy him, did he not ?

A. Right, and besieged him in the Palace ; where with a handful of Men Cæsar for a while kept off a numerous Army : at last, by setting the neighbouring Buildings on fire, where the finest Library in the World (which is supposed, among a thousand other Curiosities now lost, to have had Solomon's History of Plants) was unluckily burnt to the Ground, he makes his Escape to the Pharos, and from thence with his Sword in one hand, and his Commentaries in the other, swims to his Fleet ; and after he had entirely defeated Ptolemy's Forces, who was drown'd

in

in endeavouring to save himself by flight, he puts the whole Kingdom into the hands of *Cleopatra*.

Q. *What Actions did Cæsar perform afterwards?*

A. He beats *Pharnaces*, Son to *Mithridates*, who had assisted *Pompey* with his Troops in *Thessaly*.

Q. *What was remarkable in this Victory?*

A. 'Twas so easy and sudden, that *Cæsar* writ no more than these three Words to inform his Friends of it; *Veni, Vidi, Vici*. When this was done, he vanquishes *Juba*, King of *Mauritania*, who, encouraged by *L. Scipio* and *Cato*, renewed the Civil War in *Africk*. Here he causes *Afranius*, and three hundred Senators, to be slain, who still continued to support that Party.

Q. *After his return to Rome, what did Cæsar apply himself to?*

A. To reform the Calendar, and accordingly he added Ten Days to the Year, which *Numa* had made to consist of only Twelve Lunar Months; that is to say, of 355 Days: whereas by *Cæsar's* new Alteration it was made to consist of 365 Days and six compleat Hours; reserving the six Hours to the end of every Fourth Year to make a compleat Day, which he placed before the 6th of *March*.

Q. *How was the Year named which consisted of 366 Days?*

A. *Bissextile*, because the Sixth of the Calends was twice reckon'd that Year. This manner of Computation was called the *Julian*, from *Julius Cæsar*, the Inventor of it.

Q. *When was Cæsar declared Perpetual Dictator by the Senate?*

A. After he had vanquish'd *Pompey's* Sons in *Spain*.

Q. What Honours did they pay him?

A. A Temple was dedicated to him as to a God, which so far possessed him with Pride that he slighted them, and began to set up for a Sovereign.

Q. Was not this the Cause of the Conspiracy that was form'd against him?

A. Yes.

Q. Who were the chief Contrivers of it?

A. Marcus Brutus, L. Cassius, D. Brutus, and Trebonius.

Q. Was not his Death manifestly foretold by some strange Presages?

A. Yes; but he contemned and neglected them.

Q. What sort of Presages were they?

A. Some Months before his Death, a certain Astrologer, whose Name was *Spurina*, told him that the Ides of *March* would prove fatal to him. *Calphurnia*, his Wife, the Night before he was kill'd, dreamt that the Cieling of the House fell down, and that her Husband was murder'd between her Arms. Nay, the very Day he was assassinated, having ordered some Beasts to be sacrificed, he found them all defective.

Q. These Prognosticks, and his own Indisposition, did they not make him consider with himself for some time, whether he should go out or no?

A. They made that Impression on him, that he was once minded to put off what he had to propose to the Senate till another Day; but at last, at the repeated Instances of *Brutus*, who represented to him that abundance of the Senators were come to the House, and that they had waited for him a long time, he was prevail'd upon to go out about Eleven in the Morning.

Q. Being

Q. Being on his way thither, did not some Passages happen to him which might very well incline him to return home?

A. Spurina the Augur met him, to whom says Cæsar with a smiling Countenance, Well, Spurina, behold the Ides of March are come. Right, said he, but they are not yet past. After that, an unknown Person presented him with a Petition in the Streets, wherein he informed him of the Conspiracy; but Cæsar put it among some other Papers, telling him he would see immediately what it contained.

Q. What befel him after this?

A. Being arrived at the Senate-house, he was accosted by one Cimber, under pretence of supplicating him to recall home a Brother of his, who had been banished some days before by a Decree of the Senate: But Cæsar refusing then to do it, and referring it to another time, Cimber seized upon the two Sleeves of his Robe; and Cæsar crying out against this Violence, all the Conspirators, who had given one another the Signal, surrounded him, and stabb'd him.

Q. Who gave him the first Blow?

A. One whose Name was Casca, who wounded him a little below the Throat.

Q. What happened afterwards?

A. Cæsar, who wanted neither Courage nor Vigour, seized upon his Ponyard, and made some Effort to escape; but being at the same time run through in several Places, and perceiving among the other Assassines Marcus Brutus, for whom he always express'd a mighty Tenderness, he says to him in Greek, What, you too, my Son! And then covering his Head with his Robe, he fell down at the Feet of Pompey's Statue, having received twenty-three Thrusts.

Q. What

Q. What became of his Body?

A. The whole Assembly immediately breaking up, his Body was carried to his own House by three of his Slaves.

Q. Was he buried in any State?

A. Mark Anthony celebrated his Funeral after a most magnificent manner.

Q. What did Anthony when he made his Funeral Oration?

A. He caused *Cæsar's* Robe, which was still bloody, to be brought to him.

Q. And what said the People at this mournful sight?

A. It so sensibly affected them, that they ran thro' all parts of the City with Torches in their hands to burn the Conspirators Houses.

Q. What remarkable Accident happen'd in this Confusion?

A. One *Helvius Cinna*, a Tribune of the People, having the misfortune to meet the Mob in the midst of their Fury, was cut in pieces, because they took him for *Cornelius Cinna*, one of the Assassines.

Q. What became of the Conspirators?

A. The two *Brutus's*, *Cassius*, and the rest of them, seeing this terrible Disorder in *Rome*, left the Town, and retir'd to their respective Governments.

Q. Was any thing done in honour to Cæsar's Memory?

A. The People erected a Pillar to him in the Forum, twenty foot high, with this Inscription, *Patriæ Patri.*

Q. Did they do nothing else?

A. They order'd the Gates of the Palace where he was murdered to be walled up, that the *Ides* of

of *March* should for the future be called the *Par-ricidal Ides*, and that the Senate should never meet on that Day.

Q. What was observable of these Murderers?

A. That none of them died a natural Death.

Q. How old was Cæsar when he was killed?

A. Fifty-six Years, whereof he had reigned five.

Q. Was he not much mortified at his Baldness?

A. Yes; because they often rallied him upon this Account, for which reason he was always represented with a Crown of Laurel.

Q. What sort of a Temper was he of?

A. So strangely abandon'd to his Pleasure, that his open Familiarities with Nicomedes, King of Bithynia, expos'd him to the Laughter and Invectives of the whole World. He was called Queen of Bithynia by Bibulus, who was his unactive, untalk'd of, Brother Consul.

Q. Was he not extremely given to Women?

A. He debauch'd several, and those of the highest Quality; among the rest, Posthumia, Wife to Servius Sulpitius; Tertulla, Wife to M. Crassus; and Mutia, Wife to Pompey: But the Lady with whom he was principally in love, was Servilia, Mother of that Brutus who assassinated him.

Q. What Princess was it that he most passionately adored?

A. Cleopatra, with whom he frequently spent whole Nights a feasting; nay, he had bore her company as far as Æthiopia, but that his Soldiers positively refus'd to follow him.

Q. Did not he carry her to Rome with him?

A. Yes; where he received her with all imaginable Respect, and loaded her with innumerable Presents.

Q. Had

Q. Had he any Children by her ?

A. He had a Son whose Name was Cæsario.

Q. What said Curio of Cæsar ?

A. That he was a Man of all the Women, and the Woman of all the Men.

Q. Was not he a Man of Learning ?

A. He was the most eloquent Man of his Time. He has left behind him some Orations, with a Commentary of his Actions. He could Write and Read at the same time, and Hear what was said to him: He made nothing to dictate at once to four Secretaries, nay, sometimes to seven, upon different Occasions. His History, tho' naked and unadorn'd, is writ in a most pure and elegant Style, and has been valued by all Nations. Henry, the fourth of France, who resembled him in his unfortunate End as well as his Heroick Actions, translated that part of it into French which related to the War of the Gauls. Quintilian says of him, That he spoke, writ, and fought, with the same Spirit.

Q. How many Wives had he ?

A. Four ; Cossutia, Cornelia, Pompeia, and Calphurnia.

Q. From whence was Cossutia descended ?

A. She came of an Equestrian Family, and was extremely rich ; but he repudiated her to marry Cornelia. Cornelia was Daughter to Cinna, by her he had Julia, who was afterwards Pompey's Wife. Pompeia was Daughter to Claudius Pompey, and Niece of Sylla ; he married her after the Death of Cornelia, but got himself soon divorced from her upon a Suspicion of her having committed Adultery with Clodius in the Temple of the Goddesses Bona.

Q. What did Cæsar use to say of Pompeia ?

A. That

A. That it was not enough for a Woman to be chaste, but she must likewise take care to avoid all Suspicion.

Q. Who was Calphurnia?

A. She was the Daughter of *Piso*.

Q. What Learned Writers were Contemporaries with Julius Cæsar?

A. *Lucretius* the Epicurean Poet; *Sallust*, that admirable concise Historian; *Tully*, that excellent Orator; and not to mention any more, *Cornelius Nepos*, the Biographer or Writer of Lives; and *Catullus* the Epigrammatist.

Q. Give me the Portraiture of Julius Cæsar.

A. The Turn of his Face was oval, his Forehead smooth, a Roman Nose, black lively Eyes, his Lips large, his Complexion white and lovely, of high Stature, the Fore-part of his Head bald; his Constitution, which was naturally weak, he improv'd by continual Exercise; his Humour was extremely pleasing, and his Conversation agreeable; he had a strong Voice. There was something very majestick and noble in the Air of his Face; he was easy with his Friends, exact in his Military Discipline, resolute in his Enterprizes, indefatigable in time of Danger. He often marched on foot, with his Head bare, before his Soldiers, without fearing either the Rain or the Sun.

Augustus, the second Emperor.

The Year of the World 4011. Of Rome 711.

Q. FROM whom was Augustus descended?

A. He was Cæsar's Kinsman, as being Son to *Accia*, the Daughter of *Julia*, who was Cæsar's Sister.

Q. Where

Q. Where resided he when Cæsar made him his Heir?

A. He followed his Studies at Apollonia, a City of Macedonia.

Q. Who was it that took Augustus's Part against Anthony?

A. Cicero, because he refus'd to give him Cæsar's Will, upon the score of his being too young.

Q. What Course did Anthony take?

*A. He left Rome with an Army which he had got ready, and went to besiege D. Brutus in * Mu-
tina.*

Q. What did the Romans do in this juncture?

A. Hirtius and Pansa, the two Consuls, with Octavius Cæsar, on whom was conferr'd the Title of Proconsul, marched immediately against him with an Army.

Q. Upon this Advice, how does Anthony manage his Affairs?

A. He raises the Siege to meet them, and so both Parties came to Blows.

Q. Was it a bloody Battle?

A. The two Consuls indeed lost their Lives there: However, Anthony was entirely routed; and Brutus set at liberty.

Q. After this Defeat, whither went Anthony?

A. He was forced to fly to save his Life, and pass'd the Alps with a small Retinue.

Q. Where did he retire for Protection?

A. He made his Application to Lepidus, Governour of Gallia Transalpina.

Q. What Methods did Octavius take after he heard of the strict Alliances between Anthony and Lepidus?

** Now Modena.*

A. He

Heir?
City.
gainst
far's
had
du.
th
i-
m.
et
e.

A. He was desirous of coming into the same Confederacy, being disgusted at the Senate for refusing to make him Consul.

Q. How was this new League called?

A. The second Triumvirate.

Q. And what did Octavius after he was thus reconciled to Mark Anthony?

A. He prevails with him to come into Italy with Lepidus, to confer together.

Q. Where was this Interview made?

A. In a small Island between Modena and Bologna, where all three met.

Q. What Resolutions did they here fall upon?

A. Octavius promis'd Anthony to marry his Sister-in-law.

Q. Was it not likewise concerted to take revenge to the utmost upon the Murderers of Cæsar?

A. Yes, and they divided all the Forces, and all the Provinces of the Empire, between themselves.

Q. How did they divide the Empire?

A. They resolved that Anthony should have all Gaul, except the Province of Narbo, the Government of which fell to Lepidus's Share, as did that of Spain; and that Cæsar should command Africk, Sicily, and the other Isles.

Q. Who had the charge of the War against Brutus and Cassius?

A. Cæsar and Mark Anthony.

Q. What Bargains did they make in relation to their mutual Enemies?

A. Augustus basely abandon'd Cicero to the Indignation of Anthony; and he for his part abandon'd his own Uncle to the Resentments of Octavius. Lepidus had a Brother nam'd Paulus, whom he left to the Discretion of the other two.

Q. Why

Q. *Why was Cicero proserib'd by Anthony?*

A. Because he had cruelly gaul'd him with those bitter Invectives of the *Philippicks*; which Orations were so called in imitation of *Demosthenes*, who had formerly handled King *Philip* after the same free manner.

Q. *Relate to me the Manner of Cicero's Death?*

A. He was slain by an ungrateful Monster, whose Name was *Popilius*, whom he had formerly defended. This profligate Wretch having pursued him as he was going to make his escape into *Greece*, cut off his Head and his Hands, which *Anthony* afterwards nail'd to the * Place where the Orators made their Harangues.

Q. *What became of the other two?*

A. *Paulus* made his Escape, and *Lucius Cæsar* sav'd himself by the Cunning of his Sister, who having stop't those that were sent to murder him at the Gate, gave him an opportunity to slip out at the Back-door.

Q. *Do you know the number of the Proserib'd?*

A. They were about three hundred Senators, and three thousand Roman Knights.

Q. *When the Proscriptions were over, what did Cæsar and Anthony do?*

A. They march'd against *Brutus* and *Cassius*, and left *Lepidus* in Rome.

Q. *Where was the Battle fought?*

A. In *Thessaly*, near the City of *Philippi*.

Q. *Which way did the Success incline?*

A. At first *Cassius* was beaten back by *Anthony*, and *Cæsar* by *Brutus*; but a false Alarm being given on one side, the Equality soon vanished. *Cassius*, who for his part had been forc'd

give way, imagining that *Brutus* was in the same Condition, kill'd himself.

Q. And what became of Brutus?

A. Having made a gallant opposition to *Cæsar* and *Anthony* for some time, he was at last defeated, and fearing to fall into his Enemies hands, made away with himself.

Q. What did Anthony do with the Ashes of Brutus?

A. He sent them to his Mother in a small Vessel of Silver.

Q. And how did Porcia his Wife receive the News?

A. Being inform'd her Husband was dead, she was resolv'd no longer to survive him; so she dispatch'd herself by swallowing burning Coals.

Q. But after this Victory did not Cæsar and Anthony fall out again?

A. They quarrel'd about some domestick Concerns.

Q. Was not the Difference afterwards made up between them?

A. Yes, by *Anthony's* marrying *Octavia* the Sister of *Cæsar*.

Q. After this Accommodation, what happen'd to Anthony?

A. He went into *Asia* to meet his beloved *Cleopatra* there.

Q. And where was Cæsar?

A. He came back to *Italy*, where he fell out with *Lucius Antonius*, Brother to the *Triumvir*, and made War against him.

Q. And how did it succeed on his side?

A. Having forc'd the other out of *Rome*, and shut him up in *Perusium*, he soon oblig'd him to surrender himself.

Q. What

Q. What does Lepidus in the mean time?

A. He endeavours in spite of *Cæsar* to make himself Master of *Sicily*, after they had taken it out of the hands of *Sextus Pompeius*.

Q. And how did Cæsar requite him for his pains?

A. He turned him out of the *Triumvirate*, and banish'd him to a small City, where he spent the remainder of his Life in private.

Q. What did Anthony do to please Cleopatra?

A. He discarded *Octavia*, and married that charming Queen of *Egypt*.

Q. And what followed upon this Marriage?

A. Being desirous to present her with the Empire of the whole World, he declares War against *Cæsar*, who was already but too much provoked against him for this last Action.

Q. Where was this important Battle fought?

A. At *Actium*, a Promontory of *Epirus*, where the last Century the famous Battle of *Lepanto* was fought between the *Venetians* and the *Turks*, wherein the Infidels were beaten.

Q. How many Ships were there on both sides?

A. *Cæsar* had four hundred, but *Anthony* had no more than two hundred.

Q. On which side fell the Victory?

A. In the midst of the Engagement, when as yet the Success on both sides was equal enough, on the sudden *Cleopatra*, possess'd with Fear, flies towards *Egypt*; which *Anthony* perceiving, leaves the Battle to run after this Fugitive, tho' no less a Stake than the Empire of the World depended upon it: But *Cæsar* pursued him, and laid siege to *Alexandria*.

Q. What became of Anthony?

A. Finding he was irrecoverably lost, he kill'd himself.

Q. And

Q. And Cleopatra how came she off?

A. Having resolv'd not to adorn the Triumphs of Cæsar, she follows Anthony's Example, and stings herself to death with Serpents.

Q. At what time was Cæsar the Master of the whole World?

A. In the Year of Rome 725, and the 12th Year after the Triumvirate.

Q. Did not our blessed Saviour come into the World under the Reign of Augustus?

A. Some Chronologers place his Birth 15 Years before the Death of Augustus, the 3985th Year after the Creation of the World, and the 753d from the Foundation of Rome, in the Consulate of Cornelius Lentulus, and Calphurnius Piso: But others, who have examined the Matter more exactly, place it under the Consulate of Antistius Verus, and Lælius Balbus, in the Year of Rome 747, and the 38th Year of Augustus.

Q. Had Augustus no Sons to bequeath his Empire to?

A. No.

Q. To whom did he leave it then?

A. He adopted Tiberius the Son of his Wife Livia, and at her Importunity made him Heir to the Empire, upon condition that he should adopt Germanicus the Son of Drusus.

Q. How long did he reign?

A. Fifty seven Years he possessed the Empire, and held the Monarchy or single Government by himself forty three Years. He died at Nola in Campania in Italy.

Q. How many Wives had Augustus?

A. Three; Claudia, Scribonia, and Livia Drusilla.

Q. Had he no Children by Scribonia?

A. He

A. He had *Julia*, a Lady of no extraordinary Reputation.

Q. Who was *Claudia*?

A. Daughter-in-law to *Anthony*, whom his Wife *Fulvia* had by her former Husband *Claudius*.

Q. Whom of the three did he most passionately love?

A. *Livia Drusilla*.

Q. After what manner did he marry her?

A. He took her from her Husband *Tiberius*, and marry'd her tho' she was big with Child.

Q. What do Historians particularly remark of *Augustus*?

A. That he was of so sweet a Temper, that when a certain Person came to present a Petition to him, and as he offered it shew'd a great deal of Fear, he pleasantly reproached him, saying, That he tendered him a Paper after the same manner as People use to give Meat to Elephants.

Q. And don't they observe that he was a great Admirer of the fair Sex?

A. As he particularly loved them, his Empress was so complaisant to him, as to furnish him with them from all Quarters.

Q. Who were his most intimate Friends?

A. *Agrippa* and *Mæcenas*.

Q. What was the latter remarkable for?

A. He was descended from the King of *Etruria*, and was a most munificent Patron to all the celebrated Wits of that Age, particularly to *Virgil* and *Horace*.

Q. What is it that Historians remark further concerning him?

A. 'Twas observed of him, that when the Affairs of State required Application and Diligence, no one could be more industrious than he. At other

other times, when he had no Business upon his hands, he wholly abandon'd himself to all sorts of Pleasure and Effeminacy. From these two Qualities so remarkable in him, his Encouragement to Learning, and his Inclination to a voluptuous Life, *Mæcenas* afterwards came to signify both a Patron and an effeminate Person.

Q. *When did the Latin Tongue principally flourish?*

A. All are agreed that it arrived to its greatest Purity in the Time of *Julius Cæsar* and *Augustus*. In the following Ages, what by adopting too many Greek Words into their Language, and what by the continual Irruptions of the Northern Nations, it sensibly declined; and about the sixth Century after our Saviour, was totally disused at Rome.

Q. *What Men of Note lived in his Time?*

A. So many, that 'tis a difficult matter to recount them. To begin with those that writ in Greek: At this time flourished *Diodorus Siculus*, who spent thirty Years in the capital City of the World to collect Memoirs for his Historical Library; and that most excellent Historian and Critick, *Dionysius Halicarnassæus*. Then *Titus Livy*, born at *Padua*, whose Wit, *Seneca* says, was equal to the Greatness of the Roman Empire. *Virgil*, the Prince of Epick, *Horace* of Lyrick, *Ovid* of Elegiack Poetry, *Cornelius Gallus*, *Tibullus*, and *Propertius*, with several more of eminent Note, too numerous to be here inserted, all lived in his time. In short, never did the Roman Arms and Eloquence, with all the inferior Sciences, as Musick, Statuary, Painting, &c. so universally triumph, as they did in the *Augustean* Age.

Q. *Did*

Q. Did Augustus make any Progress in the reducing of Britain?

A. He wholly neglected it, either because he believed it would scarce answer the Expence, or because he thought it not adviseable to enlarge the Limits of the *Roman Empire*; but contented himself with those which Nature had prescribed to it, viz. the *Ocean*, the *Rhine*, and the *Euphrates*.

Q. Was not the Temple of Janus shut in his time?

A. All Authors agree that it was now the third time shut up by *Augustus*, in the Year 730, after it had been shut up by *Numa*, and the second a little time after the first *Punick War*.

Q. What was the greatest Loss he sustained?

A. *Quintilius Varus* had three Legions cut in pieces by the *Germans*, under their General *Arminius*; which so disturbed him, that he was often heard to say, *Quintili Vare, redde mihi Legiones*.

Q. Had he no inclinations to be intemperate?

A. No, for in his greatest Debauches he never exceeded his six Glasses; and as for eating, he sat any where down to Dinner, let the Place be ever so homely, if he had an Appetite.

Q. Was he not superstitious?

A. Yes; and when it thunder'd, of which he was strangely afraid, he generally carried the Skin of a Sea-Calf to preserve himself.

Q. How did he respect his Son-in-law Agrippa, and the two Julia's, the Mother and Daughter?

A. He used to wish that he could have lived without Wives, and died without Children, whom he frequently called his three Imposthumes.

Q. What

Q. What sort of a Man was he?

A. His Hair was white, and somewhat frizled, his Complexion brown, but clear and smooth, his Eye-brows arched, and almost joined, a Roman Nose, his Mouth well made, small Teeth, but somewhat spoil'd, and a short Chin, his Eyes black and great, a little greenish, and full of Fire. His Body was marked with small Spots, his Stature below the common. There appear'd in his Face something agreeably majestic and charming, which deservedly gave him the Name of *Augustus*, and hinder'd a certain *Gaul of Quality*, who had resolv'd to throw him down a Precipice as he past the *Alps*, from pursuing his Design. He was of a lively Imagination, a clear sprightly Wit, and a prodigious Memory.

Tiberius, the third Emperor.

The Year of Rome 754. Of the Birth of J. C. 14.

Q. WHOSE Son was Tiberius?

A. The Son of *Livia* and *Tiberius Nero*. He was fifty five Years old when he came to the Empire.

Q. What sort of a Prince was he?

A. His chief Talent lay in Dissimulation; and he was universally hated for his Cruelty, his Covetousness, his Debaucheries, and his Pride.

Q. But how did he behave himself in the beginning of his Reign?

A. He concealed all his Faults from the World with admirable Address and Dexterity.

Q. What obliged him to stand so much upon his guard?

F

A. Be-

A. Because he was afraid of *Germanicus*, Son to his Brother *Drusus*, whom he had adopted.

Q. And how did he serve him at last?

A. He dispatched him out of the way, because he was jealous of his growing Merits.

Q. After what manner did he accomplish his Design?

A. He sends this Prince, who had already by his Valour and Conduct ended the Wars of *Germany*, into the *East*, to beat back the *Parthians*.

Q. And what way did he take there to destroy him?

A. He conferred the Government of *Syria* upon *Piso*, who being a mortal Enemy to *Germanicus*, poison'd him in the Year of *Rome* 772.

Q. Was it not discovered afterwards that he was poisoned?

A. Yes; and *Agrippina*, Wife to *Germanicus*, accused *Piso* of the Fact, who knowing himself to be guilty, prevented his Condemnation by a voluntary Death.

Q. When did *Tiberius* give the full stretch to his Cruelties?

A. After the Death of his Mother *Livia*, which happen'd much about this time.

Q. With whom did he begin to exercise his barbarous Temper?

A. By poisoning *Drusus Cæsar*, his Son; after this he starved to death *Nero* and *Drusus*, the Children of *Germanicus*: and all this by the Advice of his great Favourite *Sejanus*.

Q. How did this *Sejanus* behave himself after he became so absolute?

A. He committed a thousand Crimes; and his Insolence carried him so far as to say, That he was Emperor of *Rome*, and that *Tiberius* was only

only Prince of *Capreae*, a small Isle near *Naples*, where he used to retire. But his Pride did not last long.

Q. What Accident befel him ?

A. After he had suffer'd a thousand Indignities, he was strangled by the Hand of the common Hangman, his Body dragged about the Streets, and his whole Family executed with him.

Q. What remarkable Passage was it that happened between Tiberius and the Astrologer Thrafillus ?

A. Tiberius had resolved one Day to throw him headlong into the Sea as he was walking along with him ; so he asked him if he knew what sort of Death, and when he should die. *Thrafillus* answered him, that he knew nothing precisely of that Matter ; but this he was sure of, that he was never in so great danger in his Life, as he was at that moment.

Q. Did not this Answer wholly alter Tiberius's Resolution ?

A. Yes ; he saved him, and after this repos'd a mighty Confidence in him.

Q. Did not the Crucifixion of our Blessed Saviour happen under his Reign ?

A. It fell out in the 18th Year of his Empire.

Q. Did not Tiberius propose it to the Senate to place him among the Gods whom the Romans worshipped ?

A. Yes.

Q. And did the Senate give their Consent to it ?

A. No ; because it was forbidden by the Laws of the Twelve Tables to receive any foreign Gods.

Q. When did Tiberius die ?

A. He died in the 77th Year of his Age, after he had reigned two and twenty Years and six Months.

Q. Was not Caligula supposed to hasten his Death?

A. Yes.

Q. How did he manage it?

A. By overloading him with Blankets, under a pretence of making him warm.

Q. Where was Tiberius at that Time?

A. He was in the Isle of *Caprea*, where he had no other Witnesses of his Leudness than those who had their Share in the same Crimes; wallowing in all sorts of brutal Lusts, and in some manner forgetting he was Emperor.

Q. By what Nickname was he publickly called?

A. *Caprinus*, alluding to the Isle of *Caprea*, and his Lasciviousness.

Q. What remarkable Curiosities had he in that Island?

A. He had Chairs and Closets of his own Invention to exercise his Leudness.

Q. What things were farther observable in his House?

A. He had several Chambers furnished with lascivious Pictures and Statues, where were to be seen the Books of *Elephantis*, filled with immodest Postures.

Q. What learned Men flourished in his Time?

A. *Velleius Paterculus*, who writ an Abridgment of the Roman History, and is so universally admired for the peculiar Beauties of his Characters. *Valerius Maximus*, who has given us an excellent Collection of memorable Stories, digested under proper Heads. Some place *Quintus Curtius*, the
Writer

Writer of *Alexander's* Life, under his Reign, taking him to be the same Person whom *Suetonius* mentions as a Rhetorician, and *Tacitus* as Proconsul of *Africk*, under that Emperor. But others make him Cotemporary with *Vespasian*, and some to have lived under the Reign of *Trajan*.

Q. *What remarkable things happened in his time?*

A. The first Precedent of burning of Books began under him: For *Cremutius Cordus* having, in one of his Books, called *Brutus* the last of the Romans, *Tiberius* orders the Author to be put to death, and his Books to be burnt in the *Forum*. *Ovid* too died in his Exile in *Pontus* in this Emperor's time.

Q. *How many Wives had Tiberius?*

A. Two: *Agrippina*, the Daughter of *Agrippa*; and *Julia*, the Daughter of *Augustus*.

Q. *What sort of a Man was he?*

A. The Features of his Face were regular, his Complexion white, but pimpled: he had a melancholy Air, a fierce Look, great Eyes, the Forepart of his Head bald, a stinking Breath, large Shoulders and Breast, a grave Gait, his Stature of a prodigious Tallness.

Caligula, the fourth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 777. Of the Birth of J. C. 37.

Q. *FROM whom was Caligula descended?*

A. He was the Son of *Germanicus* and *Agrippina*, and Nephew to *Tiberius*.

Q. *Where was he born?*

A. In *Germany*, in the Camp, and was brought

up among the Soldiers, who gave him the Name of *Caligula*.

Q. For what Reason?

A. Because he wore little Boots after the Soldiers Fashion ; for Boots in *Latin* are call'd *Caligæ*.

Q. How old was he when he came to the Empire?

A. Twenty five Years old.

Q. Were not People extremely pleas'd at his Elevation to this Dignity?

A. Yes ; hoping he inherited all his Father's Virtues, as indeed he appeared to be a Prince of very good Qualities.

Q. Did not he manage himself very well at the beginning?

A. He express'd so much Tenderness and Moderation, that he rais'd the Expectations of all *Italy*. All those Persons who for Fear of *Tiberius* had absconded, now left their Holes, and walked abroad. He recall'd those that were banish'd, and abolish'd the greatest part of the Imposts and Taxes.

Q. Did this continue long?

A. No ; for soon after he wholly changed his Manner of Life, and resigned himself up to Cruelty, Leudness, and all sorts of Bestiality.

Q. What particular Acts of Cruelty are recorded of him?

A. He fill'd *Rome* with the Blood of the principal Men of the Empire ; nay, he abused his own Sisters.

Q. What was his common Saying?

A. He frequently wished the People of *Rome* had but one Head.

Q. Why so?

A. That he might have the pleasure of cutting it off, and destroying all the *Romans* at one Stroke.

Q. When

Q. When his Sister Drusilla was dead, what Respect did he pay to her Memory?

A. He caused a Temple to be erected to her, as if she had been a Goddess.

Q. How did he serve those that lamented her Death, and those that expressed no Sorrow at all for it?

A. He indifferently commanded them both to be put to death.

Q. For what Pretence?

A. The first, because they envied Drusilla's Happiness, whom he had so lately enrolled among the number of the Gods; and the latter, because they did not bewail the loss so of amiable a Princess.

Q. How far did his Pride and Arrogancy carry him?

A. He commanded himself to be adored as a God, and would needs have Temples built to him in all Places. He pretended that the Moon was mightily fallen in love with his Person, and that she frequently came down to caress him.

Q. How did Vitellius rally him upon that Subject?

A. Why, says he, when you Gods are together, we poor Men are not able to see what you are a-doing.

Q. To what other monstrous Extravagances did his Folly lead him?

A. He made his Horse to be declared Consul in full Senate: he banish'd Livy's Statue and Writings from all Libraries: he gave Virgil the same Treatment, and would have suppressed the Verses of Homer, pretending his Power ought to be no less than Plato's, who had prohibited reading of them in his imaginary Republick.

Lastly, as he hated *Seneca*, and all Men of eminent Virtue, it came into his Head to abolish not only the Laws, but all the living Oracles of them, the most celebrated Lawyers.

Q. Had he not a mighty Ambition to ride on Horse-back over the Sea?

A. To accomplish this unaccountable Frolick, he built a Bridge of Gallies from Naples to Baia, which is reckon'd to be more than four Miles.

Q. And what noble Pranks did he play upon this Bridge?

A. He magnificently feasted all such whom their Curiosity had brought thither, and afterwards caused them to be thrown into the Sea.

Q. Having quitted Rome to go and fight the Britons, what fine Employment did he set his Army upon?

A. He only made them gather Cockle-Shells, and with these Spoils he came back to Rome.

Q. After what manner did he receive those that came to see him?

A. He only gave them his Foot to kiss.

Q. In his Buildings what did he chiefly affect?

A. To force Nature, and attempt Impossibilities.

Q. How spent he those prodigious Sums which Tiberius had gather'd?

A. In levelling Mountains and Valleys.

Q. How was his Death?

A. He was kill'd by Cassius, and Sabinus a Captain of the Guards.

Q. How long did he reign?

A. Three Years, ten Months, and eight Days.

Q. What became of Cæsonia his Wife, and his Daughter?

A. His

A. His Wife was likewise assassinated, and they dashed out the Brains of the little Daughter he had by her, against a Wall.

Q. What found they in his Cabinet after his Death?

A. A Book, wherein he had writ down the Names of all those whom he designed to put to death; and a Coffe, wherein there was so great a quantity of Poison, that having thrown it into the Sea, they saw the Shore next Morning cover'd with dead Fish.

Q. What Writers of Note flourished in his Time?

A. Appion the Grammarian, for his insupportable Vanity called the *Cymbalum Mundi*; and that most eloquent Platonist, *Philo Judæus*, a Jew.

Q. How many Wives had Caligula?

A. Four; *Junia Claudilla*, *Livia Orestilla*, *Lollia Paufina*, and *Cæsonia*.

Q. What sort of a Man was he?

A. Of tall Stature, bright Hair, the Top of his Head bald, his Forehead high, large, and wrinkled, his Looks fix'd and stern, his Eyes sunk in his Head, hollow Temples, a pale Complexion; a great Belly, Neck and Legs; his Body all over covered with Hair. He was a great Master of Musick, and had an extraordinary fine Voice. He was very adroit and dexterous at handling his Arms, dancing, and cleverly turning a Chariot.

Claudius, the fifth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 781. Of the Birth of J. C. Anno

Q. Of what Family was Claudius the Chief?

A. He was Son to *Drusus*, the Brother

of *Germanicus*, Uncle of *Caligula*, and Nephew of *Tiberius*.

Q. How came he to be elected Emperor ?

A. At that very time when the Senators were deliberating whether they should chuse any other Emperors, or re-establish the Commonwealth upon its ancient Bottom, some Soldiers broke into the Palace with a Design to plunder it.

Q. And did they rifle it accordingly ?

A. No ; for happening to find *Tiberius Claudius Nero* there, who hid himself for fear of being killed, they carried him immediately to the Camp, and proclaimed him Emperor.

Q. What was his true Character ?

A. That he was a Prince without Vice, but had no manner of Spirit or Conduct.

Q. By whom did he suffer himself to be entirely governed ?

A. By his Wife and Freedmen.

Q. What do Historians particularly tell us of his Wife Messalina ?

A. She caused the greatest part of her Gallants to be put to death, when they were no longer able to satisfy her brutal Passion.

Q. Among the rest, did she not cause Silanus to be assassinated, who was one of the handsomest Gentlemen of Rome ?

A. Yes ; and the Reason was, because he refused to gratify her Lust.

Q. A strange Monster of an Empress this ! But what is farther observable of her ?

A. That she could not see a well-made beautiful Actor upon the Stage ; but she immediately became passionately in love with him.

Q. What End came she to at last ?

A. Claudius,

A. Claudius, who had tamely bore all these Injuries so long, at last wakens out of his Lethargy, and causes her, with her Adulterer Caius Silius, to be killed.

Q. What provoked him to it ?

A. While he was but a Day's Journey distant from Rome, his rampant Empress publickly marries this Roman Knight, and makes him Consul.

Q. How many Children had he by Messalina ?

A. Britannicus and Octavia.

Q. After Messalina's Death, whom did he marry ?

A. His Niece Agrippina, Daughter to his Brother Germanicus, and the Mother of Nero, whom she had by Domitius.

Q. What sort of a Woman was this Agrippina ?

A. A Princess of a great Spirit.

Q. What remarkable thing is recorded of her ?

A. She established a Roman Colony in Germany upon the Rhine, from her called Colonia Agrippina, and now called Cologne.

Q. When, for the gratifying her Ambition, she consulted the Oracle to know what her Son's Fortune would be, what Answer did she receive ?

A. That he would be Emperor indeed, but he would certainly murder her.

Q. And what said she to this Prediction ?

A. It signifies nothing, so long as he reigns : Occidat, modo imperet.

Q. What did Claudius die of ?

A. He was poisoned by Agrippina, who gave him some Mushrooms to eat.

Q. Why did she serve him so ?

A. Because he would not declare her Son his Successor to the Empire.

Q. *Did this Poison carry him off?*

A. No ; but it made him extreamly sick.

Q. *Who then hastened his Death?*

A. His Physician thrust a poisoned Feather down his Throat, under a pretence of making him vomit up his Mushrooms.

Q. *How long did he reign?*

A. Thirteen Years, eight Months, and twenty Days.

Q. *When Claudius was dead, what did Agrippina do to Britannicus?*

A. She shut him up, for fear the Romans should chuse him to succeed.

Q. *And what did Nero do in the mean while?*

A. He was at the Camp, and got himself declared Emperor.

Q. *Did Nero bury Claudius magnificently?*

A. Yes ; and prevailed to have him canoniz'd by a Decree of the Senate.

Q. *How many Wives had Claudius?*

A. Six ; *Lepida, Camilla, Urgulanilla, Petina, Messalina, and Agrippina.*

Q. *How many Children had he?*

A. He had by *Urgulanilla, Drusus and Claudius ;* by *Petina, Anconia ;* and by *Messalina, Octavia and Britannicus.*

Q. *Describe me the Person of Claudius.*

A. The Corners of his Eyes were full of little red Veins, his Stature was tall, his Body well proportioned, a good Countenance, his Mien majestic, his Voice was harsh and disagreeable, his Mouth full of Spittle, and his Nose always dropping ; he had a very bad Memory, and a phlegmatick heavy Soul.

Nero,

Nero, the sixth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 794. Of the Birth of J. C. 54.

Q. *I Desire to be informed of Nero's Genealogy.*

A. He was the Son of *Domitius Enobarbus*, and *Agrippina*.

Q. *How old was he when he came to the Empire?*

A. Sixteen Years old; *Seneca* was his Master; and *Burrus* his Governour.

Q. *What remarkable things do Historians tell of him?*

A. Being one day obliged to sign a Dead-Warrant for a Criminal, he seemed to be touched with so much Compassion, that he wished he could not write: *O quam vellem me nescire literas!*

Q. *Which was his principal Vice?*

A. Cruelty.

Q. *With whom did he begin to exercise that barbarous Quality.*

A. He first poisons *Britannicus*.

Q. *What farther barbarous Acts did he commit?*

A. He put his Mother *Agrippina* to death after he had for a long time before stripped her of all Authority, nay, and turned her out of Court.

Q. *After he had caused her to die, what did he more?*

A. He had a mind to behold her all naked as she lay, and brutally said, that he did not think his Mother had been so fine a Woman.

Q. *Did he make any farther Progresses in his Barbarity?*

A. He

A. He took away *Otho's* Wife, named *Poppea Sabina*; he repudiated *Oelavia*, and afterwards put her to death; and shortly after he kick'd the above-mentioned *Poppea*, so that she died of it.

Q. Was no Conspiracy formed against him?

A. *Piso* contrived one against him, and had engaged several Gentlemen in it; but *Nero* happening to discover the Author and his Accomplices, among whom were the Poet *Lucan* and *Seneca*, he put them all to death.

Q. Wherein did his Vanity chiefly lie?

A. He mightily valued himself for playing well upon the Harp in the Theatre, and singing his Part with the Comedians: Nay, he made a Voyage as far as *Greece*, to let the *Grecians* see he was a good Musician, and a good Actor.

Q. Who was it he married instead of a Woman?

A. *Pythagoras* his *Libertus*, or Freedman.

Q. Had he not a natural Inclination to Mischief?

A. He was so strangely inclined that way, that he frequently said, King *Priam* was the happiest Prince in the World, for having the Satisfaction to see his Country all in Flames before he lost his Kingdom.

Q. Had he not a great Fancy to represent the Burning of *Troy* by that of *Rome*?

A. One Night he distributed his Guards thro' all parts of the City, and commanded them to set the Houses on Fire, which they so diligently executed, that in a short time the whole Town was in a Flame.

Q. Where was *Nero* all this while?

A. Upon

A. Upon *Mæneas's* Tower, from whence he beheld the Fire, and sung some of *Homer's* Verses upon the Destruction of *Troy*.

Q. Whom did he charge with this Action?

A. As he had a mortal Hatred to the Christians, he accused them with having set the City on fire, and put several of 'em to death for it.

Q. Was it not he who began to persecute them first at Rome?

A. Right; and made them suffer Torments which till that time were unknown.

Q. Was not Armenia taken by one of his Generals?

A. *Domitius Corbulo*, sufficiently famous for conquering the *Frisians*, took and burnt *Artaxata*, the Metropolis of the Country, beat out the *Parthians*, and sent *Tiridates* to Rome, where he received a Diadem from *Nero*: Yet after all these considerable Services, being sent for into *Greece* by *Nero*, he was forc'd to lay hands on himself, to prevent a more ignominious Death.

Q. Was this Tyrant beloved by his Subjects?

A. No; for so many Crimes having drawn upon him the Contempt and Hatred of the whole Empire, *Vindex*, a Roman Senator, and Governour of *Gaul*, revolted first against him, and declared *Galba*, the Governour of *Spain*, Emperor.

Q. In the mean while was *Rufus*, the Governour of High Germany, unactive?

A. He entred *Gaul* with a powerful Army to join *Vindex*.

Q. And what happened upon this?

A. His Army, which knew nothing of his Intention, fell upon that of *Vindex*, and cut it to pieces.

Q. What did *Vindex* do when he saw this?

A. Ima-

A. Imagining that *Rufus* had betray'd him, and enraged at the entire Loss of his Troops, he out of despair kill'd himself.

Q. What was the Upshot of all ?

A. The German Army joined the small Remainer of the *Gaulish*, and then *Rufus* declared *Galba* Emperor.

Q. Was not Nero terribly alarmed at this Revolt ?

A. Instead of preparing himself for a Battle, he resolved to make his Escape into *Egypt* ; saying, he could get his livelihood any where by his Acting and Singing.

Q. How did his Guards behave themselves, seeing him so strangely pusillanimous ?

A. They all forsook him.

Q. Whither then did Nero retire to save himself ?

A. He stole privately out of *Rome*, and hid himself in a Cave.

Q. When the Senate perceived that, what Resolutions did they take ?

A. They declared him at the same time an Enemy to the People of *Rome*, condemned him to die, and sent out Soldiers every where to go and apprehend him.

Q. Well, what befel him at last ?

A. Finding there was no hopes to preserve his wretched Life any longer, and yet not having Courage enough to hasten Death with his own Hands, he desir'd *Epaphroditus*, one of his Freedmen, to kill him, who broke his Ponyard as he endeavour'd to do him that Kindness, but at last made a shift to dispatch him.

Q. Was not Nero the last Emperor of the Augustean Family ?

A.

A. Yes.

Q. How old was he when he died?

A. One and thirty, having reigned thirteen Years, seven Months, twenty eight Days, on the very same Day whereon he had formerly commanded his Wife *Octavia* to be assassinated.

Q. How many Wives had he?

A. Three; *Octavia*, *Poppea*, and *Statilia*.

Q. What remarkable Accidents happen'd in his Reign?

A. * *Lugdunum*, a famous Colony in *France*, was in the space of one Night burnt down to the ground; and so, as an antient Writer handsomly express'd himself, *Inter magnam urbem, & nullam, vix horarum aliquot spatium fuit.*

Q. What learned Men flourished at that time?

A. *Seneca* and *Lucan*, the Uncle and Nephew, whom *Nero* caused to be put to death for being concerned in *Piso's* Conspiracy: The former an excellent Philosopher; and the latter, if he had been Master of a solid Judgment, as he was of Flame and Spirit, a most admirable Poet. Then *Perseus*, the obscure Satirist; and *Silius Italicus*, who composed a Poem about the *Punick War*; *Epicetus* the Moralist, Slave to *Epaphroditus*, one of *Nero's* Freedmen, and *Petronius Arbiter*.

Q. Who was *Petronius Arbiter*?

A. An *Epicurean* by Profession, and Comptroller of *Nero's* Pleasures, who made profession of a cultivated polite Luxury; for Purity of Style and Wit scarce to be matched by any of the *Roman* Writers. Tho' he was one of the Empe-

* Lyons.

ror's greatest Confidants, yet falling at last into disgrace with him, he bled himself to death, and at his last Moments caused some delightful Verses to be repeated to him.

Q. What sort of a Man was Nero ?

A. His Visage was full and red, but not agreeable, his Hair of a Chestnut Colour, falling down in Rings ; he was short-sighted, his Eyes blue, and sunk in his Head, his Neck and Belly large, his Skin very bad, and his Stature indifferent.

Galba, the seventh Emperor.

The Year of Rome 808. Of the Birth of J. C. 68.

Q. BY whom was Galba declared Emperor ?

A. By his Army ; but his over-great Severity was the Reason why he did not continue long in the possession of the Empire.

Q. Did he find no manner of Opposition ?

A. He was scarce arrived at Rome when he received Advice that Vitellius, the Governour of Germany, was proclaim'd Emperor by his Army.

Q. What Measures did he take to maintain his Authority ?

A. He adopted Piso, a Man of great Merit, because he was apprehensive he should never have any Children by Reason of his great Age.

Q. Was not Otho, this Emperor's intimate Friend, offended at this adoption ?

A. It so much disgusted him, that he raised the Pretorian Bands against the Emperor, who had a great Love for him, because every Evening as he went out of the Palace he distributed some Money among them.

Q. Having gained the Affection and Good-will of the Soldiers, what did he next ?

A.

A. He immediately went to the Camp, and got himself to be proclaimed Emperor. After this he placed himself at the Head of the Guards, who killed *Galba*, and cut off his Head.

Q. What did they with his Head?

A. They carried it to *Otho*, who told them they did nothing in murdering of *Galba*, unless they clear'd their hands of *Piso*, which was almost as soon executed as advised.

Q. How old was he when they killed him?

A. Seventy two Years, and he reigned six Months and seven Days.

Q. How many Wives had he?

A. Only one, whose Name was *Lepida*.

Q. What sort of a Man was *Galba*?

A. He was neither big nor little; he had a Roman Nose, black Eyes, a bald Head, a long Visage, and full of Wrinkles.

Otho, the eighth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 809. Of the Birth of J. C. 69.

Q. WHAT was *Otho's* Character in the World?

A. He was a debauched Man, who surrender'd up his own Wife to *Nero*, in order to make his Fortune at Court by it.

Q. How did *Vitellius*, the Governour of Germany, employ himself?

A. Having been proclaimed Emperor by his Soldiers, as we have already mentioned, he marched towards *Italy* with a great Army, and there defeated *Otho* at the Battle of *Bebriacum*.

Q. Where was this Battle fought?

A.

A. Near Placentia.

Q. What Course did Otho take when he heard of the Defeat of his Army?

A. He despair'd of repairing his Loss, and so resolv'd to kill himself. His Friends dissuaded him from the Design, and represented to him what fair Expectations he had of meeting better Success next time, since he was still Master of *Italy* and *Asia*, from whence he might easily furnish himself with considerable Forces.

Q. And what Answer did he make them?

A. He said, that for his Part he thought it more adviseable to quit the Empire to *Vitellius*, than to be the Occasion of shedding so much Blood: So he advis'd them to repair immediately to the Conqueror, that they might the sooner obtain Pardon of him.

Q. And what did he do at last?

A. He slew himself, after he had burnt all the Letters which had been writ to him, and might bring his Friends into danger.

Q. How old was he then?

A. He was eight and thirty Years old, and had reigned three Months and five Days.

Q. Describe me his Person.

A. He was of a low Stature, his Head bald, his Legs crooked, and the Features of his Face much resembling *Nero's*.

Vitellius, the ninth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 809. Of the Birth of J. C. 69.

Q. WHAT sort of a Man was Vitellius, as to his Temper?

A. He was one that made a God of his Belly, and

and thought of nothing else but Eating and Drinking.

Q. What remarkable Action happen'd under his Reign?

A. Valens and Cecinna defeated Otho's Army in Italy.

Q. Where was Vitellius at that time?

A. He attended the Success of the War at Lyons, where he minded nothing but Feasting and Revelling.

Q. Where did he steer his Course, after he was inform'd that his Generals had got the Victory?

A. He marched directly to Rome, where he profusely squander'd away all the Money he found in the Treasury; and his continual Drunkenness made such a Beast of him, that sometimes he would forget he was Emperor.

Q. When he was arrived there, what did he do?

A. He banish'd all the Astrologers and Fortune-tellers out of Rome.

Q. Where was Vespasian at that juncture?

A. He was making War against the Jews, in quality of Lieutenant General to Otho.

Q. What happened to him there?

A. He was extremely importun'd by his Army to give his Consent for them to declare him Emperor.

Q. And did he hearken to this Proposal?

A. It was not without great Difficulty he was prevail'd upon to comply with them, but at last he gave his Consent.

Q. Who assisted him in this Undertaking?

A. Mucianus the Governour of Syria, and all the Princes of the East.

Q. Whom did he intrust with the Management of the Jewish War?

A. His Son Titus.

Q.

Q. And whither did he himself march ?

A. After he had dispatch'd his Lieutenants to Rome with a great Army, he went for Egypt.

Q. Was not Vitellius strangely surprized, when he heard of the general Defection of the People from him ?

A. He seem'd not to be much concern'd at the News, but contented himself with only sending his Lieutenants against *Vespasian*, who defeated them.

Q. Did not this Overthrow oblige Vitellius to march in Person against the Enemy ?

A. Right ; but he was so little accusom'd to the Fatigues and Hardships of War, that he return'd back to Rome to his Pleasures.

Q. At his arrival there, what Measures did he take ?

A. He made a Treaty of Peace with *Sabinus*, the Governour of Rome.

Q. What were the Conditions of this Treaty ?

A. That he should surrender the Empire into the Hands of *Vespasian*.

Q. Were not his Guards extremely incens'd at his making so tame a Resignation ?

A. It very much displeased them, because they lov'd *Vitellius* upon the account that he gave them liberty to do what they would.

Q. What happen'd in this Contest ?

A. The Capitol was burnt down to the Ground, as it had been once before in the bloody Disputes between *Sylla* and *Marius*.

Q. What became of Vitellius at last ?

A. He had the misfortune to be taken by the Captains of *Vespasian's* Army, and dragged naked thro' the City with a great deal of Ignominy.

Q. What

Q. What did they do to him after this ?

A. They cut his Throat, and afterwards threw him into the Tyber.

Q. How old was he then ?

A. He was 57 Years old, and had only reign'd 8 Months and 5 Days.

Q. How many Wives had he ?

A. Two ; Petronia and Galeria.

Q. How was he made ?

A. He was of an extraordinary Stature, his Belly prodigious big, and a very red Face.

Vespasian, the tenth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 809. Of the Birth of J. C. 69.

Q. WHEN was Vespasian crown'd Emperor ?

A. 'Twas after the Death of Nero, who had sent him into Judea to chastise the Insolence of certain Rebels, where he took several small Towns.

Q. By whom was he proclaimed Emperor ?

A. By his Army ; and after he had left his Son Titus in Judea, and put all the Forces there into his hands, with the whole Management of the War, he came back to Rome.

Q. And how order'd he his Affairs there ?

A. He put Vitellius to death, who, as we told you before, had made himself Master of the Empire.

Q. After what manner did he deport himself in his Government ?

A. With infinite Justice and Sweetness.

Q. What Transactions fell out the second Year of his being Emperor ?

A. The Jewish War, which some turbulent seditious Spirits had kindled under Nero's Reign, was ended.

Q. Who

Q. Who was the Ringleader of the Faction ?

A. Eleazar, the Son of Ananias ; Religion furnish'd them with a Pretence to rebel, and the People were easily induc'd to it, because the Romans had made a terrible Slaughter of their Countrymen.

Q. Who was it that laid Siege to Jerusalem ?

A. Castens Gallus, the Lieutenant of Syria ; but he was forced to raise it ignominiously, with a considerable Loss of his Forces.

Q. At what time did this happen ?

A. In the 12th Year of Nero's Empire, and the 65th of our Saviour.

Q. Whither did the Jews march after this Victory ?

A. They return'd to Jerusalem, where they chose new Leaders, and among the rest Josephus, the Son of Mattathias, in the Year 67 of Jesus Christ.

Q. What did Vespasian, who was afterwards sent by Nero, do ?

A. He took several Towns, and Josephus himself, who foretold that he should be elected Emperor.

Q. Did Vespasian then besiege Jerusalem, the capital City of the Jews ?

A. Yes ; but the Death of Nero, and the Murder of the following Emperors, interrupted the Siege.

Q. What was the Conclusion at last ?

A. In the Year 70 of J. C. at the Feast of the Passover, and on the Fifth of April, after a Siege of four Months continuance, this famous Temple was burnt, and the City abandon'd to Plunder.

Q. What follow'd upon the Loss of Jerusalem ?

A. The Name of the Jewish People was abolish'd,

lish'd, and their Miseries were so excessively great, that 'tis certain God Almighty reveng'd upon this perfidious Nation the unjust Death of his Son.

Q. What Calamities did they sustain?

A. There was so terrible a Famine during this Siege, that the Besieged were forced to feed upon the vilest Things imaginable, Man's Flesh not excepted; nay, some Mothers were reduc'd to such Straits as to eat their own Children.

Q. Without question they lost a World of Men in this Siege.

A. About Eleven Hundred Thousand Souls perished there, which is almost an incredible Thing.

Q. What became of the City?

A. It was raz'd to the Ground by Titus's Order; and, according to our blessed Saviour's Prediction, there was not one Stone left upon another. The Jews that remain'd, were carried away Prisoners.

Q. What happen'd in the third Year of Vespasian's Reign?

A. This Emperor and his Son triumph'd over the Jews, and afterwards he laid the Foundation of the Temple of Peace.

Q. What particular Things did he do to advance his Glory after this War was over?

A. He begun a noble Amphitheatre, which Augustus had a great Desire once to build.

Q. After what manner did he end his Days?

A. Being at the Point of Death, he rais'd himself on the sudden, and cried out, *Oportet Imperatorem stantem mori*, an Emperor ought to die standing.

Q. How old was he when he died?

A. He was Sixty-nine Years old ; he reigned ten Years within ten Days, and hasten'd his Death by drinking too much cold Water.

Q. Pray give me a Description of him.

A. He was of an indifferent Stature, but thick, his Visage red, his Shoulders large, his Constitution vigorous, his Looks chearful, his Behaviour courteous, a warlike Mien, his Temper civil, but covetous.

Q. Was it not he that gave Occasion to the Proverb, To shoe a Mule?

A. Yes.

Q. How did it happen?

A. Being once in the Country, a Man who desir'd to speak with him, gave some Money to the Muleteer who conducted his Litter, to stop it, and make as if he was going to shoe his Mule.

Q. Did not the Emperor smell out the Trick?

A. He immediately gave Audience to the Man that had a Desire to talk with him, but ask'd his Muleteer how much Money he got by shoeing his Mule.

Q. Was he not constrained to lay several Taxes upon the People?

A. Yes; because his Predecessors had by their Luxury quite exhausted the Publick Treasury.

Q. Was it not he that laid an Excise upon Urine?

A. Yes; by the same Token that his Son taking Occasion to remonstrate to him that this Excise was dishonourable, *Vespasian* takes a Piece of Gold out of his Pocket, holds it to his Nose, and asks him whether it smelt ill or no.

Q. What Answer did he make?

A. He told him, No. And yet for all that, says

says the Emperor, *this very Piece came from the Excise upon Urine.*

Titus, the Eleventh Emperor.

The Year of Rome 819. Of the Birth of J. C. 79.

Q. *WHO was Titus?*

A. *The Son of Vespasian.*

Q. *How did he behave himself in the Beginning of his Reign?*

A. *He immediately quitted the natural Propensity he had to Lewdness, and treated every one with that Sweetness, that he was called the Love and Delight of all Mankind.*

Q. *What were the first Instances he gave of his Clemency?*

A. *He pardon'd two Persons of Quality who had conspir'd against him; he likewise pardon'd his Brother Domitian, who had form'd a second Conspiracy against him, and instead of punishing him, declar'd him his Successor in the Empire.*

Q. *How died he?*

A. *His Brother Domitian, notwithstanding he had pardon'd him before, dispatch'd him by Poison, when he was aged Forty-one Years, and after he had reigned two Years, two Months, and twenty Days.*

Q. *What other Demonstrations did Titus give of his Mercy?*

A. *'Tis said he never refus'd any Thing which was ask'd of him; and would frequently say, that a Prince ought not to send back any of his Subjects sad or discontented from his Presence.*

Q. *What is besides reported of him?*

A. *One Night as he was at Supper, he remem-*

bred himself that he had done Good to nobody that Day: *My Friends*, says he to those that were about him, *I have lost a Day; Diem perdidit.*

Q. What remarkable Passages happen'd during his Reign?

A. A prodigious Quantity of Fire and Ashes broke forth from *Vesuvius*, which were thrown as far as *Africk*, *Syria*, and *Egypt*.

Q. Did not this Irruption do a great deal of Damage?

A. *Pliny* the Elder being desirous to behold this terrible Spectacle, was suffocated by the Flames, and several Cities were ruin'd by it.

Q. What was it that Titus said as he was going to die?

A. That he only repented himself of one Thing, but did not express what it was: 'tis imagined that it was because he had not put his Brother *Domitian* to death, and cleared the Empire of so wicked and cruel a Monster.

Q. Had he not a great Value for the Senate and People of Rome?

A. Yes; for tho' he was passionately in love with Queen *Berenice*, yet he refused to marry her, because he thought the Senate and People of Rome would disapprove of the Match.

Q. What sort of a Man was he?

A. He was of the common Stature, the Features of his Face very good, his Belly somewhat of the largest, of a courteous Behaviour, a sweet insinuating Mien, a noble Air, which inspired all those that beheld him both with Love and Respect.

Domi-

Domitian, the Twelfth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 821. Of the Birth of J. C. 81.

Q. *WHOSE Son was Domitian?*

A. He was the Son of *Vespasian*, and younger Brother to *Titus*.

Q. *Was he like his Father?*

A. No; and much less did he resemble his Brother *Titus*, since he was one of the most profligate Monsters that ever lived; and was not inferior to *Nero* in Cruelty, Avarice, and Incontinence.

Q. *What did he chiefly excel in?*

A. He was so great a Master at his Bow, that he would frequently order a Man to be set with his Hand stretch'd out, and his Fingers open, and then he would shoot between his Fingers, and never touch him.

Q. *What was his constant Occupation?*

A. He pass'd whole Days in his Closet alone, where he diverted himself with the Royal Sport of Fly-catching.

Q. *Did not somebody rally him upon this Occasion?*

A. A certain Person of Quality having one Day asked, Who was with the Emperor in his Closet? Answer was made him, That not so much as a Fly was with him.

Q. *Did he perform any warlike Expeditions?*

A. He triumph'd twice over the *Daci* and the *Catti*.

Q. *Who was his chief Confident?*

A. One *Martial*, whom he particularly affected; I don't mean the Poet of that Name, but

another, to whom that Poet addressees several of his Epigrams.

Q. To what extravagant Actions did his Folly lead him?

A. He must needs pass for a God, and so commands several Statues of Silver and Gold to be erected to his own Honour.

Q. What other strange Frolics did he play?

A. Being minded one Day to put the Senators into a dismal Fright, he invited a great Number of them to come and sup with him.

Q. Well, and when they came there, how were they received?

A. He orders them to be lock'd up in a Hall hung with Black, and only lighted by a few Lamps, by the Light of which they could discern several Coffins, upon each of which were written the Names of those that were invited.

Q. Did not this terrible Scene possess them with strange Apprehensions?

A. Yes; for after they had continued some Time in those cruel Imaginations, some naked Persons, whose Bodies were blacken'd all over, entred the Hall with Swords in one Hand, and flaming Torches in the other.

Q. Did not they give themselves all for lost?

A. Yes; but after these black Men had danced a pretty while about them, they open'd the Doors, saying, the Emperor gave all the Company leave to withdraw.

Q. What was Domitian's usual Way to make himself remember the Names of those whom he design'd to put to Death?

A. He wrote their Names down in a Table-Book, but it cost him very dear: For having, among several others, set down the Names of his

his Wife *Domitia*, *Norbanns*, *Petronius*, and *Stephanus*——

Q. What happen'd upon it?

A. Domitia, who very well knew the Table-Book, having accidentally lighted upon it one Day, she shew'd it those Persons whose Names were written down there, as well as her own; in order to oblige them to concert Matters with her, and dispatch *Domitian*.

Q. How was Domitian's End?

A. Stephanus stabb'd him with a Ponyard in his Closet; but the Guards running in immediately to his Assistance, they soon kill'd *Stephanus* among them.

Q. What was Apollonius Tyanæus a doing at the Moment when this happen'd?

A. He harangu'd the People of Ephesus, but stopt himself in the midst of his Discourse; and after he had continued silent for some Time, he cry'd aloud, *Courage, Stephanus, strike the Tyrant*; and a Moment after says he, *The Tyrant is dead, he is just now slain*.

Q. What else do Historians remark of Domitian?

A. He persecuted the Christians throughout the whole Roman Empire. 'Twas he that banished St. John into the Isle of Patmos, tho' others lay it upon Nero, which is the more probable of the two.

Q. What learned Writers flourish'd in his Time?

A. That sonorous Enthusiastick Poet Statius; Martial, the witty Epigrammatist; Juvenal, the declaiming Satirist; that celebrated Institutor of Youth, Quintilian; Musonius, the Philosopher; Apollonius Tyanæus, a notorious Impostor and

Pretender to Miracles ; that most excellent Historian *Josephus*, who has wrote the Antiquities of his Countrymen : And for the Art Military, there was *Julius Agricola*, who sailed round Great Britain, by him conquer'd, and was the first Roman that discover'd it to be an Island. He found and subdued the Orkney Islands : But notwithstanding these great Services, *Domitian* dispatch'd him by Poison.

Q. How old was this Emperor when he was slain?

A. He was forty-four Years old, having reigned fifteen Years and six Days.

Q. Pray give me a Description of him.

A. He was lusty and well-proportion'd, he had a handsome Nose, large Eyes ; he was weak-sighted, and had a Face as red as Scarlet.

Nerva, the Thirteenth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 836. Of the Birth of J. C. 96.

Q. WHO was this Nerva?

A. He was a Person of Quality, who deriv'd his Original from Narni, a City situated in the Province of Umbria.

Q. What Character had he in the World?

A. He had the Reputation of a most excellent Prince.

Q. What considerable Things did he do in the Beginning of his Reign?

A. He cancell'd all the Edicts that had been made in *Domitian's* Time.

Q. How old was he when they elected him to the Empire?

A. He was sixty-five Years old.

Q. What

Q. What other Proofs did he give the People of his Clemency and Generosity ?

A. He restored all Persons to their Possessions, which they had been plunder'd of by *Domitian*, and gave leave to all those whom he had banish'd, to return to their native Country. Among the rest, say some, *St. John* the Evangelist, who suffer'd Exile in the Isle of *Patmos*, came back to *Ephesus*, of which City he was Bishop.

Q. What remarkable Oath was that which Nerva swore ?

A. He solemnly swore before the Senators, that he would put not one of them to Death, tho' they gave him ever so just an Occasion.

Q. And did he keep his Oath ?

A. He so religiously observed it, that two of them having conspir'd to take away his Life, he would not suffer them to die.

Q. What is commonly said of him ?

A. He sent for them, to let them see he was not ignorant of their Design against him ; he carried them with him to the Theatre, placed them on each Side of him, and then gave each of them a Ponyard, telling them before all the World, that they might try upon him whether they were good or no.

Q. What is commonly said of him ?

A. That he wanted Authority to suppress the Insolence of his Soldiers ; and his extreme old Age render'd him contemptible.

Q. What Method did he take to make himself more absolute than he was ?

A. He prefer'd *Trajan*, who at that Time commanded the Army in *Germany*, before all his Relations, and adopted him to the Empire.

Q. Did Nerva live a long While after this Adoption ?

A. No; he died three Months after, being compleatly Sixty-six Years old.

Q. Of what Distemper did he die ?

*A. Of a Fever, which he got by straining his Voice too much in talking to one *Regulus*, who had put him into a Passion.*

Q. How long did he reign ?

A. One Year, four Months, and eleven Days.

Trajan, the Fourteenth Emperor,

The Year of Rome 838. Of the Birth of J. C. 98.

Q. WHAT Countryman was Trajan ?

A. He came from Seville in Spain.

Q. Where was he when Nerva adopted him to the Empire.

A. At Cologne in Germany, and was the first Foreigner that got Possession of the Roman Empire.

Q. Who was his Master ?

A. Plutarch.

Q. What sort of a Man was he ?

*A. He was one of the greatest Generals that ever sat upon a Throne: He was sweet temper'd, merciful, and prudent; nay, he was so charitable to his Soldiers who were wounded in his Wars with the *Dacians*, that he tore off his own Shirt from his Back to bind up their Wounds, when they had no Linen of their own.*

Q. What considerable Actions did he perform ?

*A. He defeated the *Dacians*, and their King *Decebalus*, over whom *Domitian* triumph'd at Rome,*

Rome, tho' he scandalously bought a Peace of him; he subdued *Armenia*, *Iberia*, and *Colebis*; he overthrew the *Sarmatians*, *Astremians*, and *Arabians*, with the Inhabitants of the *Bosphorus*.

Q. What other Conquests did he make?

A. He attack'd the *Parthians*, and took from them *Armenia*, *Persia*, *Seleucia*, *Babylon*; and reduced a very considerable Part of *Asia* under the Roman Power.

Q. Was not he surnam'd Germanicus?

A. Yes; for the glorious Exploits he perform'd in *Germany*.

Q. Did not several Persons come to congratulate him upon his many Victories?

A. Ambassadors visited him from all Parts of the World; nay, some came from as far as the *Indies*, to compliment him upon those Occasions.

Q. What remarkable Presents were made him?

A. He was presented with a Horse from *Armenia*, which fell down upon his Knees as often as he went to mount him.

Q. By what other Actions did he increase his Reputation with the People?

A. He utterly exterminated those insufferable Vermine in a well order'd Commonwealth, the Delators and Informers, who had made so fine a Harvest on't, under the Reigns of *Domitian*, *Nero*, *Caligula*, and *Tiberius*.

Q. What remarkable Accidents happen'd in his Time?

A. There was so prodigious an Earthquake at *Antioch*, while he and the whole Court lay there, that the City was almost wholly destroyed.

Q. And how did Trajan make a Shift to save himself?

A. He escaped through the Windows of the Room where he lay.

Q. Where died he?

A. At *Selinus*, a City of *Cilicia*, whither he order'd himself to be carried.

Q. What Respect was paid him after his Death?

A. His Ashes were brought to *Rome*, and placed in a Golden Urn on the Top of a Pillar of a prodigious Height, and curious Workmanship, which he had caused to be erected in the Publick Place, and which is to this Day called *Trajan's Pillar*.

Q. How long did he reign?

A. Ten Years, six Months, and fifteen Days; he liv'd Sixty-three Years.

Q. What remarkable Things do you find in his Reign?

A. Two: The first of them was the unparall'd Confidence he repos'd in one of his Friends, whose Names was *Sura*.

Q. How did he make it appear?

A. Some Persons who envied him for the great Share he possess'd in the Emperor's Friendship, strove by all imaginable Means to blast his Reputation, and render him suspected to his Master. They accus'd him with forming a Design against his Life; but *Trajan*, to let them see how far he relied upon the Honesty of his Friend, having received an Invitation to sup with him, went thither freely.

Q. Well, and what did he do there?

A. After he had sent back his Guards, he orders *Sura's* Physician and Barber to be called to him; the former he commands to take off the Hair about his Eye-brows, and the latter to shave his

his Beard: After this he goes to a Bath, and then sits down very unconcern'd with the rest of the Company.

Q. What said he to his Friends next Morning?

A. He recounted to them every Thing in Order as it pass'd, and told them, that if *Sura* had any Intentions to kill him, he gave him the fairest Opportunity the Day before to do it that a Man could wish; and since he had neglected it, it was an infallible Indication that he had no such Design in his Head.

Q. What is the second remarkable Thing?

A. *Trajan*, in giving his Sword to the Colonel of the Guards, according to the usual Custom, utter'd these glorious Words: *Take this Sword, and if I govern like a just Prince, employ it in my Service; but if I abuse my Authority, draw it against me.*

Q. What added he afterwards?

A. That he who gave Laws to the rest of the World, lay under greater Obligations to observe them than any of his Subjects.

Q. What Title did the Romans bestow upon him?

A. They gave him the Surname of *Optimus*.

Q. Was not his Memory exceeding dear to Posterity?

A. It was held in so great Esteem, that in succeeding Times, when an Emperor was promoted to this high Dignity, amidst the other Acclamations that were made in the Senate-house, they used to wish that he would prove as happy as *Augustus*, and as good as *Trajan*.

Q. What Answer did he make his Friends, who were reproaching him one Day with his too great Condescension and Good-Nature?

A. That

A. That he lived with his Subjects just as he would have wished them to live with him, if they had been the Masters.

Q. What Faults or Vices do you observe in him?

A. Two very great ones: The first, that he was given to excessive Drinking. The second, that he loved young Boys.

Q. What was his Wife's Name?

A. *Plotina*, who in some ancient Medals is represented with a very tall Head-dress, much resembling the modern Commodores.

Q. What Learned Men flourish'd in his Time?

A. *Plutarch* of *Cheronea*, that admirable Philosopher, and Biographer. *Pliny* the younger, who in his Panegyrick upon *Trajan*, which he deliver'd in the Senate-house when he was Consul, gives us the true Exemplar of an excellent Orator, as well as he does of a good Prince. *Suetonius*, who has wrote the Lives of the twelve first *Cæsars*, with the same Freedom as they lived them. *Lucius Florus*, who hath left us a pretty Compendium of the *Roman* History, tho' justly censur'd for too much affecting pointed Sentences. And lastly, *Cornelius Tacitus*, a sublime and grave, tho' sometimes obscure Historian, famous for his Reflections, and the good Sense of his Observations, which will always preserve their Reputation in the World, especially with those Persons that intend to study Politicks.

Q. Was not he severe against the Christians?

A. He rais'd a cruel Storm against the Professors of that Religion; and among the rest, *Ignatius*, Bishop of *Antioch*, was torn in pieces by wild Beasts. At last, having receiv'd a favourable

able Account of the Simplicity of their Worship, their Innocence, and Morals, from *Pliny* junior, in an Epistle which is still extant, the Persecution abated.

Adrian, the Fifteenth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 857. Of the Birth of J. C. 117.

Q. *WHO was this Adrian?*

A. Cousin to *Trajan*, and his Countryman, for he was a Native of *Spain*.

Q. *How came he to be made Emperor?*

A. By the cunning Management of *Plotina*, the Wife of *Trajan*.

Q. *But how did she carry on this Affair?*

A. As soon as the Emperor was dead, she sent a forged Declaration immediately to the Senate under his Hand, whereby he adopts *Adrian*, and declares him his Successor. In the mean time she dexterously conceals his Death till *Adrian's* Adoption was confirmed by the Authority of the Senate.

Q. *Did Adrian make any Conquests?*

A. So far from that, that he devoted himself wholly to Peace, and abandon'd *Assyria*, *Armenia*, and *Mesopotamia*, to the *Parthians*.

Q. *What do Historians remark of him?*

A. That he loved to be always travelling abroad.

Q. *What Reason did he alledge for so doing?*

A. He used to say, that a Prince ought to imitate the Sun, who carries his Light thro' all the Corners of the World, and illuminates all the Regions of the Earth.

Q. *How*

Q. How many Years did he spend in surveying the Empire?

A. Thirteen.

Q. And what observable Things are reported of him during this long Progress?

A. He separated the Britons from the Picts by a Wall forty Leagues long, which took up the whole Breadth of the Island, and reached from the German Ocean to the Irish Sea: It was likewise fortified by a Ditch of the same Length.

Q. Wherefore built he this prodigious Wall?

A. To secure the Britons from the Insults of the Picts, who were so called from painting their naked Bodies, to make them look the more terrible to their Enemies.

Q. What did he besides?

A. He gave a King to the Germans, who were upon the Point of revolting, because he did not look upon himself to be in a Capacity to retain them in their Duty by Force.

Q. How did he treat the Armenians?

A. He remitted the Tribute they were obliged to pay to the Roman Emperors, and gave them leave to elect a King of their own.

Q. What Respect was it he shewed to the Memory of Pompey?

A. Having seen his Tomb in Egypt, which was below the Dignity of so great a Man, he caused a very magnificent Sepulchre to be erected to him.

Q. Did not the Jurisconsults, or Lawyers, principally flourish under his Reign?

A. They did; and Julian composed the Perpetual Edict by the Emperor's Command, to serve as a Rule to all the Pretors that administered Justice in Rome. It was called *Edictum*

Per-

Perpetuum, because it was to continue in Force for ever

Q. *After what Manner died he?*

A. Being weary of living longer, and having frequently endeavour'd to dispatch himself, he died at last of bleeding immoderately at the Nose, after he had adopted *Ælius Antoninus*.

Q. *How many Years did he possess the Empire?*

A. Twenty Years and eleven Months, being Seventy three Years old.

Q. *Whom did he marry?*

A. *Sabina*, *Trajan's* Niece.

Q. *How did he govern his Soldiers?*

A. By living just as they did, and eating their Ammunition-Bread, Bacon, and Cheese, after the Example of *Scipio*, *Æmilianus*, and *Metellus*.

Q. *Did not he much apply himself to the Study of Magick?*

A. Yes.

Q. *Was he a Man of Learning?*

A. There was ne'er a Man in his Empire who knew so many several Things, in so many several Professions. Besides, he had a prodigious Memory, and could repeat by heart the Names of all Places, Passes of Rivers, and his Soldiers.

Q. *Did he take a Pleasure to converse with learned Men?*

A. Yes; and would always pretend to the Glory of having got the better of them in all Disputes. One *Favorinus* by Name, having own'd himself out-done by the Emperor, altho' he could easily have repell'd the Force of his Arguments, if he had been so minded, and his Friends blaming him for it; *Why*, says he, *would you not have me give place to the Man that has thirty Legions at his Command?*

Q.

Q. What particularly recommended him to the People?

A. His Moderation and Clemency : for after his Arrival to the Empire, he would by no Means revenge the Injuries that had been done him before. And having once met a Person that had offended him, says he, You have escaped, since I am made Emperor.

Q. What learned Men flourished in his Time?

A. Ptolemy of Alexandria, the famous Astronomer ; Pblegon, Adrian's Libertus, who deserves so well of History for his exact Calculation of the Olympiads ; Arrian, who wrote the Expedition of Alexander the Great ; and Aulus Gellius, the learned Author of the Noctes Attice. At the same Time those monstrous Hereticks, Basilides, Carpocras, Marcion, and the Gnosticks, began to shew their Heads, and disturb the Tranquillity of the Church.

Antoninus Pius, the Sixteenth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 878. Of the Birth of J. C. 138.

Q. FROM whence came Antoninus?

A. He was a Gaul by Birth, and born at Nismes, a City of Languedoc. For his Clemency, and other Virtues, he had the Surname of Pius bestow'd upon him.

Q. What was his most usual Saying?

A. That he would rather chuse to preserve the Life of one Roman Citizen, than to kill a thousand Enemies.

Q. Give me his Character.

A. He was the most just and most moderate of all the Roman Emperors ; and had left an unblemish'd

blemish'd Name behind him, if out of too warm a Zeal for his own Gods he had not suffer'd the Christians to be persecuted, in which Tempest *Telesphorus* and *Hyginus*, Bishops of Rome, suffer'd Martyrdom.

Q. What Reputation had he abroad?

A. Tho' he never stir'd out of *Italy*, and but seldom out of *Rome*, yet he effected more by the Authority of his Virtues, than any of his Predecessors had done by their Arms. *Pharasmanes*, King of *Iberia*, having seen and convers'd with him, immediately made those Concessions which he had formerly refused. *Vologethes* the *Parthian* no sooner read his Letter, but he quitted his Pretences to *Armenia*; nay, the *Indians* and *Hircanians* chose him to be an Arbitrator of their Differences.

Q. What Answer was it he gave his Wife Faustina, when she blamed him upon the Score of his being too liberal?

A. He laugh'd at her Avarice: And don't you know, says he to her, that now we are in Possession of the Empire we have nothing of our own, but that it belongs all to the People?

Q. How did he serve idle Persons?

A. He so far detested them, that he turn'd out of their Places such as were unserviceable to the Public; saying, Nothing was so scandalous, and indeed so cruel, as to suffer the Commonwealth to maintain those lazy Mouths that did nothing at all for it.

Q. Did he love to visit the Provinces of the Empire?

A. No: for let a Prince, says he, take ever so much Care, yet his Retinue will be a Charge and Burthen to the People.

Q. Whom

Q. Whom did he adopt for his Children?

A. Lucius Verus, and Marcus Aurelius; he gave his Daughter in Marriage to the latter, and declar'd him his Successor.

Q. Pray give me an Instance of his Moderation and Goodness.

A. Apollonius refused to go to Court to teach Marcus Aurelius, pretending that a Master ought not to dance Attendance after his Scholar. Why, replies Antoninus, 'tis a wonderful Thing that so great a Philosopher as you are, should find it a greater Way from your Lodgings to the Court, than from Chalcis to Rome.

Q. How died he?

A. He died of an Indisposition at his Country-House, in the seventy-sixth Year of his Age, after he had reigned twenty-two Years and six Months.

Q. What eminent Men flourished in his Time?

A. Galen of Pergamus, the celebrated Physician: Maximus Tyrius, a Platonick Philosopher. Aelian, who has left a small Tract of Natural History. Justin, the Abbreviator of Trogus Pompeius. And Diogenes Laertius, who wrote the Lives of the Philosophers.

Marcus Aurelius and Lucius Verus, making together the Seventeenth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 901. Of the Birth of J. C. 161.

Q. WHO was this Marcus Aurelius?

A. Son-in-Law to Antoninus. He was called the Philosopher, because he applied himself very much to the Study of Philosophy, and by Sect was a Stoick.

Q. Who shared the Empire with him?

A. Lucius

A. Lucius Verus, his Brother, who had married his Daughter Lucilla.

Q. Was not this the first Time that two Emperors held the Empire together?

A. Yes.

Q. What was the Reason of making this Innovation?

A. Because Adrian would not adopt Antoninus but upon this Condition, that when he arrived to the Empire, he should adopt Marcus Aurelius, and that M. Aurelius should adopt Lucius Verus.

Q. What sort of a Character had Verus in the World?

A. He was too effeminate, and too great a Lover of his Pleasures.

Q. What do Historians observe concerning him?

A. Marcus Aurelius having sent him to fight against the Parthians, he threw the whole Burden of the War upon his Lieutenants, who obtained great Advantages over the Enemy.

Q. What did these two Emperors do afterwards?

A. Having triumphed over the Parthians, they declared War against the Marcomanni.

Q. What happened to Verus in this Expedition?

A. He died of an Apoplexy.

Q. And what did Marcus Aurelius do upon his Death?

A. He marched alone against these People, whom by this Time the Goths and Vandals, the Sarmatians, Suevi, and other barbarous Nations, had joined.

Q. What Success had Marcus Aurelius in this War?

A. After

A. After a Dispute of three Years Continuance, he entirely defeated and subdued 'em.

Q. What remarkable Accidents fell out in the Course of this War?

A. The *Marcomanni* being thus overthrown, the Emperor marching against the *Quadi*, was got into a Pound, and surrounded on every Side by the Enemies. Nor was this all, for his Army was ready to perish for want of Water; but a Legion, wholly consisting of Christians, by their earnest Prayers obtain'd so plentiful a Shower of Rain, that the whole Army was infinitely refresh'd by it.

Q. Was nothing more observable in it than this?

A. This Rain was accompanied with prodigious Thunder and Lightning, which only fell upon the Barbarians, and cast them into so great a Confusion, that the Romans immediately charging them, cut them all in pieces.

Q. How was this Legion named?

A. *Fulminatrix Legio*, the thundering Legion.

Q. What Concessions did the Emperor make to them in consequence of this Miracle?

A. He stopt the Persecution against the Christians, whom till this Time, at the Instigation of the Philosophers, by whom he was solely manag'd, he had most cruelly treated. In this Persecution, *Pius*, *Anicetus*, and *Soter*, Bishops of Rome, *Justin Martyr* the learned Apologist, and *Polycarp* Bishop of *Smyrna*, received the Crown of Martyrdom.

Q. What Men of Note lived in his Time?

A. *Hermogenes* the Rhetorician, *Herodes Atticus*, and *Atheneus*, whose learned Writings are so highly valued by the Criticks: *Philostratus* a Sophister, who wrote that impudent Legend of

Apol-

Apollonius's Life: *Apuleius* an *African*, who sufficiently discovers his Country by the Harshness of his Style: and *Lucian*, who from a Christian turning Atheist, employ'd his Satirical Talent so liberally upon the Christian and Heathen Priesthood and Deities.

Q. What was his Wife's Name?

A. Faustina, who was one of the most barefaced lascivious Women that ever lived.

Q. Did he not get himself divorced from her?

A. He could never be induced to use her so; saying, that he could not cast her off with Justice, unless he returned her back her Dowry, which was the Empire.

Q. Where died he?

A. In Pannonia (now Hungry) in the sixty-first Year of his Age.

Q. How long did he reign?

A. Nineteen Years and ten Days.

Q. To whom did he recommend his Son?

A. To the Gods and the Roman People, if he were worthy of it.

Commodus, the Eighteenth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 910. Of the Birth of J. C. 180.

Q. WHO was Commodus?

A. The Son of M. Aurelius, and the lustful Faustina. But some say that he was begotten by a Gladiator.

Q. What sort of a Prince did he make?

A. He was the handsomest, but the lewdest and most vicious Man of his Age. As for the Administration of State Affairs, he wholly entrusted them with Perennis, a Person of great Ambition and Cruelty,

Cruelty, whom he had constituted his *Præfectus Prætorii*, or Captain of his Guards.

Q. What do Historians particularly relate concerning him?

A. That he was so admirable an Archer, that one Day having order'd 100 Lions to be let loose one after another, he killed them all. At another Time he did the same by 100 Ostriches, and cut off their Heads with his Arrows, which were headed in the Fashion of a Half Moon.

Q. How did he behave himself towards his Sister Lucilla?

A. He caus'd her to be put to Death for having conspired to advance her own Husband to the Imperial Dignity, who was only a bare Senator of Rome. She was first married to the Emperor Verus.

Q. Wherein did he show his Ambition?

A. In commanding himself to be call'd Hercules the Son of Jupiter: Nor was his Cruelty less predominant than his Ambition, for he sacrific'd all those to his barbarous Resentments, of whom he had the least Suspicion.

Q. After what Manner died he at last?

A. He was poison'd by his Concubine Marcia, because she came to understand that he had resolv'd to dispatch her out of the Way.

Q. How happen'd she to receive that Information?

A. By the Means of a Child who found the Emperor's Table-Book, wherein she found her own Death design'd.

Q. What prompted him to serve her so?

A. Commodus (who spent his Time at Court among Strumpets and Catamites, and abroad with Fencing-Masters and Bullies) had, it seems, resolv'd

ved to lie in the Gladiators Amphitheatre, in order to go out with them the next Morning, and harangue the People in that blessed Company: Now she had taken the Freedom to remonstrate to him how mightily this would sink his Reputation, and how contemptible it would render him to the whole World.

Q. How long did this true Transcript of Nero and Caligula hold the Empire?

A. Twelve Years, nine Months, and fourteen Days; and died in the one and thirtieth Year of his Age.

Pertinax, the Nineteenth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 933. Of the Birth of J. C. 193.

Q. HOW was Pertinax descended?

A. He came of very mean Parents; he was a Ligurian (a Genoese) by Nation, first a Grammarian, and afterwards turned Soldier.

Q. Did not he refuse the Empire?

A. Yes; but they compell'd him to accept of it. He endeavoured to avoid it, by recommending Glabrio, a Senator, to their Choice, who, as he said, was a Man of far greater Merit than himself.

Q. Pray acquaint me with his Character?

*A. He was an exceeding valiant, discreet, modest, and sweet temper'd Prince: He would not suffer his Wife to be called *Augusta*, or Empress, nor his Son to be saluted with the Title of *Cæsar*.*

Q. What happened to him?

A. He was assassinated by his Soldiers, three Months after he had been proclaimed Emperor.

Q. For what Reason?

A. Because he showed himself too severe to-
H wards

wards them, and designed to keep them under Military Discipline; so they cut off his Head, and carried it to the Camp, where they fortify'd themselves. Seeing nobody stir, they order'd one of the Soldiers to make Proclamation that the Empire was to be sold, and that he who bid the most, should be put into Possession of it by the Army.

Q. The Empire being thus offer'd to Sale, what Chapmen came in to buy so great a Purchase?

A. Only two Senators; Sulpitian the Governor of Rome, and Julian: but the latter carried it, because he offered the greater Sum.

Julian, the Twentieth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 933. Of the Birth of J. C. 193.

Q. WHO was Julian?

A. Grandson to the famous Lawyer of that Name, who composed the perpetual Edict, in Adrian's Time. Being proclaimed Emperor, and conducted to the Senate-House by his Guards, he made a very fine Speech to the Senators, to this Effect; You want an Emperor, and I am the fittest Person you can chuse.

Q. Did not the People mutiny against him?

A. Yes; and refused to acknowledge him, saying he had stole the Empire.

Q. What became of him at last?

A. Severus, who was at that Time Governor of Pannonia, being desired by the Romans to take the Management of the Empire upon himself, revolted against him.

Q. What Measures did Julian take to avoid this Storm that threaten'd him so?

A. He offer'd to take him as Partner with him in the Empire.

Q. And did Severus accept the Condition?

A. He

A. He returned him no Answer, but still advanced towards *Rome* : which News so dispirited *Julian*, that he sent him Word he was ready to resign the Empire, provided he would give him his Life and Liberty. At last he was murder'd by his own Soldiers, in the fifty-sixth Year of his Age, after he had reigned two Months, and five Days.

Severus, the Twenty-first Emperor.

The Year of Rome 933. Of the Birth of J. C. 193.

Q. FROM whence came Severus ?

A. He was originally an *African*, and seized on the Empire under Pretence of revengeing the Death of *Pertinax*, which he did by degrading the *Pretorian* Soldiers that had kill'd him.

Q. Had he no Competitors in the Empire ?

A. At first *Albinus* set up in *Britain*, and *Niger* in *Syria* ; but having with great Celerity made himself Master of *Rome*, he beat *Albinus* by Stratagem, and *Niger* by open Force.

Q. How did he effect it ?

A. Not thinking it adviseable to have two Enemies upon his Hands at once, he takes off *Albinus* by proclaiming him *Cesar*, then pursues *Niger*, and after several sharp Encounters, takes and puts him to Death. Having thus rid himself of *Niger*, he immediately marches towards *Albinus*, whom he defeats and kills at *Lyons*.

Q. Whom did he take Partners with him in the Empire ?

A. *Caracalla* and *Geta*, his two Sons.

Q. How did he behave himself towards the *Christians* ?

A. A Christian Soldier refusing to wear a Crown as a Donative, unhappily proved the Occasion of a sad Persecution, in which *Ireneus*, Bishop of *Lyons*, laid down his Life for the Truth. His great Favourite *Plautianus* incited him to this Cruelty, laying hold of this Occasion to seize the Fortunes and Estates of several Persons of Quality that were Christians.

Q. What became of him at last?

A. After he had vanquished a World of People, he pass'd over into *Britain*, whither being arrived, and not able to follow his Captains, by reason of the Gout, which indisposed him, he received Advice that his Son *Bassianus* was declared *Cæsar* by the Army.

Q. And did not this News extremely mortify him?

A. He got himself immediately to be carried in a Litter, and commanded the New Emperor to be brought before him, with the Tribunes and Centurions, who were so strangely affrighted at the Majesty which appear'd in his Looks, that they implor'd his Pardon upon their Knees.

Q. How did he receive them?

A. I would have you know, said he to them, that it is the Head that governs, and not the Feet. After this he fell dangerously sick; but *Caracalla* fearing that he would not die, tried to corrupt his Father's Physicians to poison him.

Q. And did they comply with his Desires?

A. No, for which he remembered them when he came to be Emperor, for he caused them all to die.

Q. Where did Severus end his Days?

A. At *Tork*, being sixty-six Years old, after he had reigned seventeen Years, eight Months, and

and three Days. Here perceiving his last Hours approach, he cried out, *I have been all that a Man can be, but it stands me in no stead now.* Then he order'd his Urn to be brought to him, wherein his Ashes were to be inclosed; and taking it between his Hands, *Little Urn*, says he, *thou shalt contain that which the whole World was not able to contain.*

Q. What was his true Character?

A. He was cruel, and had no Regard to his Word.

Q. To balance this, had he no good Qualities?

A. He took Delight to administer Justice; he was well skilled in the Laws, and preserved a particular Esteem for *Papinian*, the most eminent Lawyer of that Time.

Q. What did the Senate say of him?

A. What had been formerly said of *Augustus*, they now said of him, That it had been very advantageous for the Republick if he had never been born, or had never died: because, as on the one Side he was serviceable to the Commonwealth, so on the other, he was somewhat too cruel.

Q. What may be further said of him?

A. The same that was said of *M. Aurelius*, viz. That he had been happy if he had had no Children. He was exceedingly regretted after his Death.

Q. What learned Men flourished under his Reign?

A. *Clemens Alexandrinus*, a Man of universal Learning, who wrote the *Stromata*; *Tertullian*, an Ecclesiastick Author likewise, in Humour, Wit, and Style, an *African*; *Minutius Felix*, who wrote an elegant Defence of the Christian Religion,

ligion, worthy of *Augustus's* Age: with several more of a lower Rank.

*Caracalla and Geta, making together the
Twenty-second Emperor.*

The Year of Rome 951. Of the Birth of J. C. 211.

Q. *TO whom fell the Empire after the Death of Severus, who died in Britain?*

A. To his two Sons, whom he carried along with him in that Expedition.

Q. *For what Reason did he carry them with him?*

A. To remove them from Rome, where they lived in all manner of Excess.

Q. *What was Geta's Character?*

A. He was of a sweet easy Disposition, as his Brother *Caracalla* was naturally brutish and outrageous.

Q. *What barbarous Action did that Monster commit in the second Year of his Reign.*

A. He kill'd his Brother *Geta* with his own Hand, in the Presence of his Mother *Julia*.

Q. *What other Instances can you give me of his Cruelty?*

A. He not only put above two thousand Persons to Death for adhering to his Brother's Party, but he banished several more, and cut off *Papinian's* Head.

Q. *For what Reason?*

A. Because he refused to flatter his Crime; for having desired him to write an Apology to excuse his Brother's Death, this eminent Lawyer told him, that it was much easier to commit a Parricide, than to justify it.

Q. *What*

Q. What is it that Historians report of his Mother Julia ?

A. That she had the Impudence to marry him after Geta's Death.

Q. What Person did Caracalla imagine himself to be ?

A. He fancied he was Alexander the Great, because his Head leaned a little upon one Shoulder, as that Prince's did.

Q. What is particularly observable concerning his Reign ?

A. That the Empire was never so harass'd with Imposts and Taxes, as it was under this Monster of Prodigality.

Q. What was the Reason why he oppress'd his Subjects so severely ?

A. He would frequently maintain, that Money ought not to be lodged in private Hands, but that all should go to his Exchequer, to be distributed among the Soldiers.

Q. What became of him at last ?

*A. While he was making War against the Parthians, he wrote to Materninus, Governor of Rome, to consult the Astrologers, to know what Fortune Macrinus, the *Præfectus Prætorii*, would come to.*

Q. To whom was the Governor's Answer carry'd ?

A. It was delivered to Caracalla himself, while he was busied in managing a very fine Horse in the Presence of Macrinus.

Q. And did he read it ?

A. No : he gave it to Macrinus to read, who spoke not one Word of it to the Emperor, but wholly employ'd himself to find out a Person that would kill him.

Q. Did he find one ready to execute his Design?

A. He met one Martial, after a little Search, whose Brother Caracalla had put to Death, who received this Commission with great Eagerness, and run him thro' the Body while he was easing Nature.

Q. How long did he reign?

A. Six Years, two Months, and five Days.

Q. Was he beloved of the People?

A. No; he was hated by all the World, except the Soldiers only, who regretted his Loss, by reason of the excessive Largesses he frequently bestow'd upon them.

Macrinus and his Son, making together the Twenty-third Emperor.

The Year of Rome 957. Of the Birth of J. C. 217.

Q. FROM whence came Macrinus?

A. He was a Moor by Birth, and of a very mean Condition at first.

Q. What Station was he in when they proclaimed him Emperor?

A. He was the Præfectus Prætorii.

Q. Whom did he associate with himself in the Empire?

A. His Son Diadumenus.

Q. What remarkable Things do we read of Macrinus?

A. He made a Peace with the Parthians, and in his Return to Rome divided his Army into Bodies, that they might march home two several Ways; but this Division occasion'd his Ruin.

Q. Pray tell me how?

A. Mæsa, Sister to the Empress Julia, recommended

mended to the Soldiers (who, you must know, had no great Affection for *Macrinus*) a young Gentleman about nineteen Years old, the Son of her Daughter *Semiamira*; who, as they commonly pretended, was *Caracalla's* Bastard, and they called him *Heliogabalus*.

Q. How did the Soldiers relish this Proposition?

A. They immediately proclaimed him Emperor, because they loved him for his Father's Sake; and he for his Part marches directly towards *Macrinus*, and defeats him.

Q. What became of Macrinus?

A. He was kill'd as he endeavoured to save himself in the City of *Antioch*; and shortly after his Son *Diadumenus* was slain by the Order of the Emperor *Heliogabalus*.

Q. How long did he and his Son reign?

A. One Year and two Months.

Heliogabalus the Twenty-fourth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 959. Of the Birth of J. C. 219.

Q. WHOSE Son was Heliogabalus?

A. The Son of *Caracalla*.

Q. What signifies the Word Heliogabalus?

A. A Priest of the Sun.

Q. What remarkable Thing is related of him?

A. He intended to destroy the Religion of the Romans, and commanded that only the Sun should be ador'd.

Q. What sort of Prince was he?

A. A Prodigy of a Man, wholly abandon'd to all Lewdness and Debauchery.

Q. To whom was he marry'd, in the Quality of a Wife?

A. To Hierocles, his Slave.

Q. What Orders did he give this Slave?

A. To beat him well-favour'dly when he found him guilty of an Excess.

Q. And did the Slave take him at his Word?

A. Yes; and sometimes belaboured his Imperial Sides so heartily, that he made him black and blue all over; which the other bore very dutifully, comforting himself, that a Wife was obliged in Conscience to suffer every Thing from her Husband.

Q. What did he do after this?

A. He establishes a Senate of Women, and makes his Mother the President of them.

Q. What did this wise Assembly debate about?

A. The Habits and Ornaments of Women, together with their Amours and Intrigues.

Q. Whom did he adopt for his Successor?

A. Bassianus, his Cousin German, whom he called Alexander?

Q. What kind of a Man was Alexander?

A. He had so many valuable Qualities to recommend him, that he soon gained the Affection of all the Romans.

Q. Did not Heliogabalus become jealous of him?

A. Yes; and designed to put him to Death.

Q. What happen'd upon this?

A. His Guards being acquainted with his wicked Intention, assassinated Heliogabalus, and threw his Body into the Tyber.

Q. How old was he then?

A. He was twenty-two Years old, and had reigned three Years, nine Months, and four Days?

Q. What eminent Men flourish'd at this Time?

A. Ori-

A. Origen of Alexandria, who so learnedly defended the Christian Religion against the Attacks of Celsus.

Alexander Severus, the Twenty-fifth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 962. Of the Birth of J. C. 222.

Q. *WHAT Account do Historians give of this Alexander?*

A. He was one of the greatest Princes that ever lived, and his Conduct was equally conspicuous, in Peace and War.

Q. *What did he look after in the Beginning of his Reign?*

A. His first Care was to administer Justice to all the World; next he turned the Flatterers and Buffoons out of the Court.

Q. *What other Regulations did he make?*

A. He prohibited the Sale of any Offices, as being satisfy'd that none made a Scruple to sell what they had bought.

Q. *What did he allow them in lieu of this?*

A. He settled honourable Salaries on all those whom he constituted Governors of Provinces, lest they should squeeze and oppress the People.

Q. *What is reported of his Piety?*

A. That he secretly honoured Jesus Christ in his Closet.

Q. *What other remarkable Passages occur in his History?*

A. In Heliogabalus's Time, there was a Set of Cheats, commonly called *Sellers of Smoke*, because they took Money of People to solicit their Business, and help them to Preferment, but never did any Thing for them.

Q. *Were*

Q. Were there any of this Gang under the Emperor Alexander?

A. One of this hopeful Fraternity had, it seems, taken a hundred Crowns of a Soldier, and promised to obtain of the Emperor a certain Office which he was desirous of.

Q. And when Alexander knew of it, how did he serve him?

A. He fastens him to a Post, where he was choaked by the Smoke of a Heap of Wood which was set on Fire about him. Over the Post this Inscription was to be seen, *Fumo periit qui fumum vendidit*; He that sold Smoke is stifled by Smoke.

Q. Did any considerable Revolution happen in Alexander's Reign?

A. Artaxerxes, King of the Persians, after he had defeated the Parthians in several Battles, and killed their King Artabanus, who was the last of the Family of the Arsacidae, which had flourished four hundred Years, re-establishes the Empire of the Persians. This exceedingly alarm'd Alexander Severus, by reason of the frequent Inroads the Persians made into the Roman Territories.

Q. What great Exploits did Alexander perform after this?

A. Having revived the old Military Discipline, he defeated the Persians in the East, and overcame the Africans in Mauritania. At last, wholly turning his Thoughts upon the German War, he, with his Mother Mammaea, were slain by the Soldiers at Mentz, in the 39th Year of his Age, having reigned thirteen Years and nineteen Days. 'Twas his Mother's Penuriousness that ruined him with the Army.

Q. What

Q. What eminent Men flourish'd in his Reign?

A. Dion Cassius, twice honoured with the Consular Dignity, who wrote the Roman History very accurately in Greek; the greatest Part of this excellent Work is now lost, which is chiefly attributed to the Abbreviator Xiphilinus, a Constantinopolitan Monk. Thus the Loss of Trogus Pompeius is imputed to Justin, as that of Livy to Lucius Florus.

Maximin and his Son, making together the Twenty-sixth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 975. Of the Birth of J. C. 235.

Q. WHOSE Son was this Maximin?

A. A Shepherd's, in a small Village of Thrace.

Q. What Stature was he of?

A. An extraordinary one, being eight Feet high; and besides, he was so strong that he could draw a Chariot as heavy laden as two Horses could draw.

Q. How got he himself advanced to the Empire?

A. By a Faction of the Soldiers. He was the first Emperor that without any Decree of the Senate obtained the Purple by the sole Authority of the Army.

Q. What Method did he take to preserve himself in this Dignity.

A. After he had successfully ended the Wars of Germany, he exercised great Cruelties in Rome: some he fasten'd to Crosses, where they miserably perished; others he baited in the Skins of Beasts, and expos'd 'em to Tygers and Lions; others were kill'd with Bastinadoes; in short, there was no sort of Barbarity which he did not use.

Q. Did

Q. Did not these Brutalities draw the Aversion of all the World upon him?

A. The Senate declar'd him an Enemy to the Republick.

Q. Who first made head against him?

A. Gordianus, the Governor of Africk, a Man eighty Years old, was, together with his Son, against his Will, elevated to the Empire; but Fortune crossed his Attempts, and his Son being slain by the Moors, the old Gentleman out of Despair hanged himself.

Q. When the Senate heard of the Death of these two great Men, whom did they elect for their Emperor?

A. Balbinus and Pupienus, two of their own Body.

Q. Was not Maximin highly incensed at the Proceedings of the Senate?

A. He immediately quitted the Sarmatian War, and marching into Italy at the Head of his Army, he besieg'd Aquileia, which was the first City he met in his Way, and was at that Time the finest and most flourishing Town in all Italy.

Q. Who signalized themselves in this Siege?

A. The Women: For their Soldiers wanting Cordage to string their Bows, and serve the Machines that were employ'd in throwing of Stones, they cut off their own Hair, and made Cords of it.

Q. What became of Maximin?

A. His Soldiers slew him and his Son in his Tent, because he had occasioned the Death of so many of them.

Q. How long did he and his Son reign?

A. Two Years and some Months.

*Balbinus and Pupienus, making together
the Twenty-seventh Emperor.*

The Year of Rome 978. Of the Birth of J. C. 238.

Q. *By whom were Balbinus and Pupienus
own'd to be Emperors?*

A. By the Senate.

Q. *Upon what Condition?*

A. That they should adopt young *Gordianus* for their Successor in the Empire, the Grandson of him who hanged himself in *Africk*.

Q. *How long did they reign together?*

A. Nine or ten Months.

Q. *What happened at last?*

A. *Balbinus* and *Pupienus* became jealous of young *Gordianus*, seeing him so mightily belov'd by every one, and therefore had agreed, for their own Security, to dispatch him; but the Soldiers prevented their Design, and kill'd 'em.

*Gordianus the Younger, the Twenty-
eighth Emperor.*

The Year of Rome 978. Of the Birth of J. C. 238.

Q. *WHOSE Son was this Gordianus?*

A. Grandson, as we observ'd before, to *Gordianus* the Governor of *Africk*.

Q. *How old was he when he came to the Empire.*

A. He was seventeen Years old.

Q. *In whom did he repose the greatest Confidence?*

A. In his Father-in-law *Mistheus*, who was the *Præfectus Prætorii*, and was so well satisfied

fied of his Conduct and Valour, that tho' he himself was present in the Army, yet he would have it wholly commanded by him.

Q. What Actions did he perform?

A. By the Advice of *Misitheus* he opens the Temple of *Janus*, and marches directly against the *Persians*, who then threaten'd *Italy*.

Q. What Conquests did he make?

A. He retook *Carre*, *Nisibis*, and some other Cities.

Q. What other remarkable Things happen'd under his Reign?

A. In the sixteenth Year of it, *Philip*, an *Arabian*, by the Assistance of his Physicians, poison'd *Misitheus*.

Q. What did this Philip do afterwards?

A. He got himself declared Emperor, in the Presence of *Gordianus*, who fearing further Mischief from this perfidious Villain, desired him at least to give him the Place of *Præfectus Prætorii*.

Q. And did he give it him?

A. No, he refus'd him; but fearing the Soldiers would restore this young Prince to his Throne again, he caus'd him to be murder'd.

Q. Was the Army concern'd for his Death?

A. It so far affected them, that they erected a Tomb to him with this following Inscription; *To the divine Gordianus, Conqueror of the Persians, the Goths, the Sarmatians, and the Germans, but not of the Philips.*

Q. How long did he reign?

A. Three Years and six Days.

Q. Did nothing remarkable happen about this Time?

A. The *Goths*, whose Name before was unknown to the *Romans*, now daily begun to pour forth

forth vast Swarms of Men upon the Outskirts of the Empire, which at last terminated in the Ruin of it. These barbarous People carried every thing like a vast Inundation before them, and erected Kingdoms, not only in all the *Southern* Provinces of *Europe*, but extended their Conquests as far as *Africk*. They first introduced the Feudal Law into this Part of the World, and settled fix'd Revenues in Land, and temporal Jurisdictions upon the Church, which before consisted of nothing but voluntary Oblations.

Philip and his Son, making together the Twenty-ninth Emperor.

Q. *FROM whence came this Philip?*

A. He was an *Arabian* by Birth.

Q. *What Measures did he take to secure himself of the Empire?*

A. As he thought it advisable to conceal his Crime from the Senate, he sent them Word that *Gordianus* died a natural Death; so that it was no difficult Matter for him to obtain of them to confirm the Choice which the Army had made of him.

Q. *Did he take any Partner in the Empire?*

A. Yes; his Son.

Q. *How long did they reign?*

A. Five Years and some Months; after which they were both assassinated, almost at the same time; the Father in a Sedition that happen'd at *Verona*, and the Son at *Rome*.

Q. *What Men of Note flourish'd now?*

A. *Plotinus*, a celebrated *Platonist*, and a Disciple of *Origen*, who taught with great Applause at *Rome*; and *St. Cyprian*, a most eloquent Father and Ornament of the *African Church*.

Decius

*Decius, the Thirtieth Emperor.**The Year of Rome 989. Of the Birth of J. C. 249.*

Q. *IN what Station was Decius before he got Possession of the Empire?*

A. He was nothing more than a Senator.

Q. *How did he arrive to the Supreme Dignity?*

A. Being sent by *Philip* to appease a Sedition which had arose in *Pannonia*, he was there chosen Emperor by the very Authors of that Commotion, who discovered all Sorts of good Qualities in him; and indeed he had only one Fault, which was his excessive Cruelty to the Christians.

Q. *What did he enjoin them to do?*

A. They were constrain'd, by all Manner of Tortures and Punishments, to offer Sacrifices to Idols.

Q. *Was he engaged in any War?*

A. He fought against the *Goths*, but was miserably overthrown by them, his Son slain in his Sight, and himself lost in a Marsh, whither he fled, by the Advice of *Gallus*, to save himself.

Q. *How long did he reign?*

A. Near three Years.

Q. *What remarkable Thing fell out in his Time?*

A. 'Tis said he was the Author of the seventh Persecution; to avoid which Storm, several Christians fled into the Woods and Caves; and particularly *Paulus* of *Egypt*, the Patriarch of the Hermits, being taken with the Charms of a solitary Life, here laid down the first Scheme of Monckery. Among others, Pope *Fabian* lost his Life; and *Origen* was taken into Custody, and impri-

imprison'd, but to avoid Death he was prevail'd upon to offer Incense to Idols.

Q. What other Passages happen'd ?

A. At the same Time *Novatus* and *Novatianus* made a Schism in the Church; and the above-mention'd *St. Cyprian*, Bishop of *Carthage*, flourish'd; who in the Year of our Lord 256, under the Pontificate of *St. Stephen*, having assembled a Council at *Carthage*, declar'd the Baptism of Hereticks to be null and void, and that such Persons ought to be rebaptiz'd: However, he effac'd this Error by his Martyrdom, which happen'd in the Time of *Valerianus*.

Gallus and Volusianus his Son, making together the Thirty-first Emperor.

The Year of Rome 991. Of the Birth of J. C. 251.

Q. WHO was this Gallus ?

A. He was Lieutenant of *Decius's* Army.

Q. How came he to be proclaimed Emperor ?

A. By the Soldiers, after the Death of *Decius*.

Q. What Means did he use to secure himself in the Empire ?

A. He procur'd his Election to be ratified by the Senate.

Q. When he was at Rome, what did he do ?

A. He associated his Son *Volusianus* with him in the Empire.

Q. What did he do besides this ?

A. He likewise adopted the Son of *Decius*.

Q. Why did he take this young Decius a Partner with him ?

A. To

A. To quiet the Minds of the *Romans*, tho' shortly after he caused him to be poisoned.

Q. *What became of Gallus at last?*

A. He and his Son were murdered by their own Army, for their Cowardice.

Q. *How long did they reign?*

A. Two Years and four Months.

Æmilianus, the Thirty-second Emperor.

The Year of Rome 994. Of the Birth of J. C. 254.

Q. *FROM whence came Æmilianus?*

A. He was a Moor by Birth.

Q. *What Office did he bear when he was made Emperor?*

A. He was Governor of *Pannonia*.

Q. *By whom was he proclaimed Emperor?*

A. By the Soldiers, because he had beaten back the *Scythians*, who had made an Inroad into that Country.

Q. *How long did he reign?*

A. Not longer than three Months.

Q. *What happened to him then?*

A. He was killed by the very same Soldiers, who, three Months before, had proclaimed him Emperor.

Q. *What made them serve him so?*

A. Because they despised him, by Reason of his mean Parentage.

Q. *Whom did they elect in his Place?*

A. *Valerianus*, Governor of *Germany* and *Gaul*, an experienc'd Captain, and a Man of Quality.

Vale-

Valerianus, the Thirty-third Emperor.

The Year of Rome 994. Of the Birth of J. C. 254.

Q. WHAT Sort of a Man was Valerianus?

A. He possessed all the good Qualities that make an excellent Prince.

Q. Was he a successful General?

A. No; for he lost every Battle he fought.

Q. Whom did he associate with him in the Empire?

A. His Son.

Q. How did he treat the Christians?

A. At the Instigation of a certain Magician, and of Macrinus the Perfect, he rais'd a terrible Persecution against them, in which St. Laurence was burnt upon a Gridiron.

Q. What memorable Things happened in his Time?

A. The Barbarians committed great Ravages upon all the Provinces of the Empire.

Q. Did not Valerianus use his best Endeavours to stop their Proceedings?

A. He did; and after he had attack'd the Scythians (who had taken Chalcedon, burnt Nice, and the famous Temple of Diana at Ephesus) he turned his Forces against Saporess, King of the Persians, but was taken Prisoner in that War.

Q. How did they use him when they had him in their Power?

A. He was treated by that cruel King with all the Indignity imaginable, for he made a Footstool of him to mount his Horse, and at last ordered him to be slay'd and salted.

Q. When his Son Gallienus heard of his Father's

Father's Captivity, did not he employ his utmost Power to deliver him from it ?

A. No ; and when a Messenger came to acquaint him with his Death, he replied, rather with the Stupidity of a Barbarian, than the Sedateness of a Philosopher, That he knew very well his Father was born mortal, and subject to all the Accidents of Fortune.

Q. What extravagant Actions did he ever commit ?

A. He was vain enough to make a Sort of a Triumph, wherein was to be seen a Man clad in Royal Vestments, resembling Saporess, loaded with Chains, and follow'd by several others that represented the Persian Captives, as if he had really vanquished the King of Persia.

Q. Did none of the Spectators laugh at this ridiculous Show ?

A. Some Senators made very merry upon this Occasion, and drawing near the Sight, they ask'd aloud, where was their Emperor Valerianus ?

Q. When Gallienus heard of it, how did he resent it ?

A. He commanded all those that took this Liberty to be burnt.

Q. How long did Valerianus reign ?

A. Six or seven Years.

Gallienus, the Thirty-fourth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 999. Of the Birth of J. C. 229.

Q. WHOSE Son was Gallienus ?

A. The Son of Valerianus.

Q. What remarkable Accidents happen'd in the World when he succeeded his Father ?

A. All

A. All the Provinces belonging to the *Romans* design'd to throw off their Yoke, and the respective Governors of them caus'd themselves to be proclaim'd Emperors; so that besides *Gallienus*, the *Roman Empire* might reckon thirty *Cesars*, or Tyrants.

Q. Who was it that stopt the Progress of the Enemies of the Empire?

A. *Odenatus* King of *Palmira*, a generous heroick Prince, not only retook *Nisibis* and *Carra*, and wrested *Mesopotamia* out of the Hands of the *Persians*, but he put their Monarch to flight, killed him abundance of his Soldiers, and sent several of his *Satrapæ*, or Peers, in Chains to *Gallienus*.

Q. What did *Gallienus* do with these Prisoners?

A. This scandalous Prince was not ashamed to triumph over them, though he had no Share in the Action.

Q. What Recompence did *Gallienus* make to *Odenatus*?

A. Some Years after, in Consideration of the Victories he had gain'd, and the great Services he had done, he made him his Partner in the Empire; but one of his own Relations becoming jealous of him, murder'd him and his Son *Herod*.

Q. After *Odenatus* was dead, who took the Government in hand?

A. His Wife *Zenobia*, a Woman of an undaunted Spirit, and of a Chastity equal to her Courage, who performed those Miracles against the *Persians*, the *Arabians*, the *Scythians*, and the *Armenians*, that she will be always reckoned among the greatest Heroines of her Sex.

Q. What memorable Action happen'd at this Time?

A. The

A. The *Franks*, a warlike and powerful People, now began to make a Figure in the World, and breaking out of *Germany* into *Gaul*, in Process of Time made themselves Masters of all that large Country from the *Ocean* and the *Rhine*, to the *Alps* and *Pyrenees*.

Q. What did the principal Officers of the Roman Army do?

A. Finding that *Gallienus* was not capable to defend the Empire, they resolv'd to elect *Claudius*, a Man of Quality and Merit.

Q. What became of *Gallienus* at last?

A. He was assassinated near *Milan*, with his Brother *Valerius*, as he went to give Battle to the Tyrant *Aureolus*.

Q. How long did he reign?

A. Almost eight Years.

Claudius II. the Thirty-fifth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 1008. Of the Birth of J. C. 268.

Q. **W**HAT sort of a Man was this *Claudius* the Second?

A. One of the greatest, as well as the most accomplish'd Princes of his Time.

Q. How did he employ himself as soon as he was advanc'd to the Throne?

A. The first Thing he did was to defeat *Aureolus*, who in *Gallienus's* Time had got himself to be proclaim'd Emperor at *Milan*.

Q. What Measures did *Aureolus* take?

A. He offered to own him as the rightful Emperor, provided he would leave him what he possess'd in *Italy*.

Q. What Answer did *Claudius* return?

A. That

A. That he had done well to have made such a Proposition to *Gallienus* ; but as for himself he was resolv'd to make him know his Duty, and surrender upon Discretion.

Q. What remarkable Action did *Claudius* afterwards perform ?

A. Having defeated *Aureolus*, he marched against an Army of *Goths*, consisting of 300000 Men, that ravaged and destroyed *Asia Minor*.

Q. Which Side obtained the Victory ?

A. *Claudius* gave the *Goths* a great Overthrow, and sunk 2000 of their Ships.

Q. What Surname was bestowed upon him for this gallant Exploit ?

A. That of *Gothicus*.

Q. What died he of ?

A. Of the Plague, after he had reign'd about two Years.

Quintillus, the Thirty-sixth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 1010. Of the Birth of J. C. 270.

Q. WHOSE Son was *Quintillus* ?

A. The Son of *Claudius*.

Q. How was he proclaim'd Emperor ?

A. By the Soldiers, after the Death of his Father.

Q. How long did he reign ?

A. No more than fifteen Days.

Q. What Misfortune beset him then ?

A. He was killed in a Mutiny by the very same Soldiers that had made him Emperor.

Q. What Learned Men flourish'd at this Time ?

A. *Longinus*, a great Favourite of *Zenobia*, and a most excellent Orator and Critick, who in

his Treatise *de Sublimi* makes honourable mention of *Moses*; and *Porphyry*, a Jew by Nation, first a Christian, and afterward an Apostate, but a most acute Philosopher.

Aurelianus, the Thirty-seventh Emperor.

Q. *FROM whence came Aurelianus?*

A. He was of a very mean Birth, and came from *Pannonia*.

Q. *What sort of a Man was he?*

A. He was extremely generous, but withal cruel and bloody, which occasion'd the famous Saying, *That he was a good Physician, but took away too much Blood.*

Q. *What did he do, as soon as he was elected Emperor?*

A. He wore a Diadem, which none of his Predecessors had ever done before him.

Q. *Did he make any warlike Expeditions?*

A. He vanquish'd the *Germans* and *Marcomanni* in *Vindelicia*, which comprehended the same Track of Ground as *Bavaria* does now. Then marching towards the *East*, he takes *Zenobia* Prisoner, recovers *Egypt*, and all *Asia*; and, in short, enlarges the Empire to its ancient Bounds.

Q. *When the Wars were over, how did he employ himself?*

A. He triumph'd at *Rome*, and his Illustrious Captive *Zenobia* made no small Part of the Spectacle: but he was enrag'd at some Sedition which had arisen there in his Absence, the Authors of which he severely punish'd; nay, even some of the Senators, for Faults which a milder Prince would have pass'd by.

Q. *How did the Romans relish this Severity?*

A. They began to fear him, and say, That he deserv'd to be assassinated. Q.

Q. Where, and after what Manner died he?

A. In Thrace, where he lay with a powerful Army to attack the Persians; and as he was upon the March between Byzantium and Heraclea, he was slain by Meucaporus, at the Instigation of Mnestheus, his Freed-man and Secretary.

Q. How long did he reign?

A. Five Years completely?

Q. Was his Death unrevenged?

A. No; for the Villany of Mnestheus being immediately discovered, he was condemned to be thrown to wild Beasts, and the whole Army celebrated the Funeral of Aurelianus after a most magnificent Manner.

Tacitus, the Thirty-eighth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 1015. Of the Birth of J. C. 275.

Q. AFTER the Emperor Aurelianus was thus slain in Thrace, whom did they chuse to succeed him?

A. The Soldiers wrote to the Senate, to desire them to elect an Emperor.

Q. And what Answer did the Senate return?

A. They excused themselves, saying, they would leave it to the Army.

Q. What happen'd upon this?

A. An Inter-regnum of eight Months; the Senate and the Army complimenting one another about the Honour of creating an Emperor.

Q. Who was proclaimed Emperor at long-run?

A. Tacitus, who was elected by the Senate.

Q. How old was he at that Time?

A. He was Seventy Years old, and reign'd six Months.

Q. *Where died he ?*

A. At *Tarsus* a City of *Cilicia*, of a Fever, occasioned by the Fatigues he was oblig'd to endure in his War against the *Scythians*.

Q. *Pray acquaint me with his Character ?*

A. He was grave, and of a sweet Disposition, temperate, and capable to govern very well ; he was sober at his Meals, he loved Hunting and Building, which he understood perfectly well : And what deserves particular mention, he valued himself upon being a Namesake and a Relation of that eminent Historian *Tacitus*.

Florianus, the Thirty-ninth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 1016. Of the Birth of J. C. 276.

Q. *WHO succeeded Tacitus ?*

A. His Brother *Florianus*.

Q. *Did his Reign last long ?*

A. No ; for two or three Months after his Election, seeing *Probus* was elected Emperor by the greatest Part of the Army, he open'd a Vein, and after that Manner died, in the Year of J. C. 276.

Probus, the Fortieth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 1016. Of the Birth of J. C. 276.

Q. *WHOSE Son was Probus ?*

A. He was, according to some, the Son of a Labourer in *Dalmatia* ; or, as others would have it, the Son of one *Maximilian*, a Colonel in the Army.

Q. *What Station was he in when the Soldiers declar'd him Emperor ?*

A. He was Governor of *Syria*.

Q.

Q. As soon as the Senate had confirm'd his Election, what Expedition did he go upon?

A. He made War against the *Germans*, who after the Death of *Aurelianus* had made themselves Masters of one Part of *Gaul*: These *Germans* were the true *Franks*, whom he entirely defeated, and expell'd the Country. Then he enter'd *Germany*, most Part of which he subdued, and reduced to the Form of a *Roman Province*.

Q. Whither went he afterwards?

A. Into *Asia*, where he beat the *Persians* several Times, and constrain'd them to demand a Peace; he likewise overthrew *Saturnius*, the Governor of *Syria*, who had revolted against him.

Q. What other memorable Actions did he perform?

A. He had the same Success against *Proculus* and *Bonofus*, who had usurp'd the Imperial Authority in *Gaul*, of which Place they were Governors: and having there defeated and taken them Prisoners, he ordered them to be hang'd.

Q. Who was this Bonofus?

A. A good Captain, but an excessive Drinker, which made the Emperor *Aurelianus* say of him, by way of Raillery, That he was born not to Live, but to Drink.

Q. How did they call him when he was hang'd?

A. So, said they, 'tis not a Man, but a Bottle that hangs there.

Q. Did Probus live many Years after these Conquests?

A. No; for as he march'd through *Illyrium*, he was slain at *Sirmium* by his Soldiers.

Q. What was it that occasion'd this heavy Misfortune upon him?

A. 'Twas because he treated them with too much

much Severity, and employ'd them in building or repairing the publick Works.

Q. How long did he reign ?

A. Six Years and four Months.

Q. What Men of Note lived about this Time ?

A. Manes, the Father of the Manicheans, pretending to be the Paraclete, propagated his impious Doctrines in Persia, from whence they infected the neighbouring Countries. At last he was slay'd alive there by the King's Command.

Carus, the Forty-first Emperor.

The Year of Rome 1022. Of the Birth of J. C. 282.

Q. WHO succeeded next in the Empire ?

A. Carus, who, as soon as he found himself possess'd of this Dignity, took his two Sons, Carinus and Numerianus, Partners with him in the Empire, and procur'd them to be declar'd Cæsars.

Q. To what Place did he send Carinus ?

A. To Gaul, to fight against the Franks, a German People, who had made a new Irruption into that Country.

Q. And where was Carus employ'd ?

A. He marched himself against the Persians, with Numerianus in his Company, and took Mesopotamia from them ; nay, he was desirous to extend his Conquests beyond Ctesiphon, but died in that Expedition.

Q. After what Manner did he end his Days ?

A. He was found dead in his Tent, after a terrible Tempest.

Q. To what did the Romans ascribe his Death ?

A. To the divine Vengeance, for endeavouring to carry his Victories beyond Ctesiphon ; because there

there was an ancient Oracle which forbid the Romans to extend their Empire beyond that Capital City of the Persians.

Numerianus, the Forty-second Emperor.

The Year of Rome 1022. Of the Birth of J. C. 282.

Q. *WAS* not Numerianus mightily concerned for his Father's Death?

A. He was so afflicted at it, that the Tears he shed incessantly upon this Occasion so far injur'd his Eye-sight, that he was forced to be carried in a close Litter, because he could not endure the Light.

Q. *What became of him at last?*

A. His Father-in-law *Aper*, who was Captain of the Guards, and had an Ambition to be Emperor, got him to be assassinated in his Litter.

Q. *Did not Aper take Care to conceal his Death from the Army?*

A. That the Soldiers might not have the least Suspicion of the Matter, he accompanied the Litter, as if the Emperor had been still alive in it.

Q. *What Answer did he give those Persons that asked to see him?*

A. That the Emperor had given Orders not to let the Litter be opened, because the Day-light extremely incommoded his Eyes.

Q. *Who commanded the Army all this While in the Emperor's Name?*

A. *Aper*, who by this Means pretended to possess himself soon of the Empire; but the noisom Smell of the dead Body discovered his Villany, and gave Occasion to *Dioclesian*, one of the principal Officers of the Army, to kill him upon the Spot.

Q. *And did this Action please the Army?*

A. They liked it so well, that they immediately, with one common Consent, proclaim'd him Emperor, without considering that they had another lawful Emperor still living.

Q. *Who was he?*

A. *Carinus, the Brother of Numerianus?*

Carinus, the Forty-third Emperor.

The Year of Rome 1022. Of the Birth of J. C. 282.

Q. *WHERE was Carinus when he heard that his Father was dead, and his Brother Numerianus assassinated?*

A. He was then in Gaul, where he minded nothing but satisfying his brutal Appetite.

Q. *Was he not surpriz'd when he received Advice that Dioclesian was proclaim'd Emperor, and was marching towards him, to dispute the Legality of his Title?*

A. Yes; and immediately he took leave of his Vices to go and fight him.

Q. *Where was the Battle fought?*

A. In Mysia, a Province of Asia Minor.

Q. *Which Side got the better on't?*

A. Carinus had obtain'd the Victory, but as he pursued the Enemy in their Flight, he was assassinated by a Colonel of his own Army.

Q. *For what Provocation.*

A. Because he had formerly abused this Colonel's Wife.

Q. *When did this happen?*

A. In the Year of J. C. 285, after he had reign'd three Years.

Dioclesian and Maximian, making together the Forty-fourth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 1024. Of the Birth of J. C. 284.

Q. *WHERE* was Dioclesian born?

A. In *Dalmatia*, of very obscure Parentage, but he prov'd a Man of great Generosity.

Q. *What* was foretold concerning him?

A. That he should be made Emperor as soon as he had slain a Boar, upon which Account he kill'd several in Hunting, but to no Purpose: At last, when he had slain *Aper*, the Captain of the Guards, he saw that was the Boar he was to kill; for which Reason he cried out aloud, *I have kill'd the Boar*, and the Army proclaimed him Emperor.

Q. *After the Imperial Purple was thus conferred upon him, how did he manage Affairs?*

A. Finding the Empire was invaded on every Side, and that himself alone was not able to oppose the Violence of the *Barbarians*, he took his old Friend *Maximian*, an ill-bred clownish sort of a Brute, but a good Soldier, his Partner in the Empire.

Q. *What* did these two do in Conjunction?

A. They chose each of them *Constantius Chlorus* and *Galerius* to command their Armies.

Q. *What Method* did they take to engage them more strongly in their Interests?

A. They created them *Cesars*; and afterwards, obliging them to be divorced from their Wives, *Dioclesian* gave his Daughter *Valeria* to *Galerius*, and *Maximian* his Daughter *Theodora* to *Constantinus*.

Q. These two Emperors and Cæsars, were they successful in their Wars?

A. They were so fortunate in all their Attempts against the Enemies of the Empire, that they obtain'd as many Victories as they fought Battles: and after they had spent ten Years thus in their Wars, crown'd with Glory and Success, they entered all four triumphantly into *Rome*, where *Dioclesian* caused himself to be called *Jovianus*, and *Maximian* took the Title of *Herculianus*.

Q. After these two great Men had made themselves absolute Masters of the Empire, what is it that Historians tell us they did?

A. To the great Amazement of all the World, both of 'em voluntarily quitted the Empire, *Dioclesian* at *Nicomedia*, and *Maximian* at *Milan*.

Q. Where did Dioclesian pass his Retirement?

A. At *Salonæ*, a small City of *Dalmatia*, the Place of his Nativity, where he spent the Remainder of his Life in cultivating his Gardens.

Q. And where did Maximian live privately?

A. In *Lucania*.

Q. How long did they reign?

A. *Dioclesian* reigned almost twenty Years, and *Maximian* eighteen.

Q. Was not Dioclesian a cruel Persecutor of the Christians?

A. Out of an implacable Malice to the Professors of that Religion, he design'd to extirpate them utterly out of the World; and what by the Cruelty of his Edicts, the Bigotry of his Ministers, and the barbarous Variety of his Torments, he made a greater Havock of them than any of his Predecessors. In *Egypt* only 114000 are said to be put to Death, and 700000 sent into Banishment. The *Thebean* Legion, together with
their

their Commander *Mauritius*, were cut off by *Maximian*; but this Relation, by some modern Criticks, is look'd upon to be fabulous.

Q. Was not Maximian soon weary of this retired Life?

A. Yes; and being desirous to leave it, in order to re-assume the Imperial Dignity he earnestly importunes *Dioclesian* to remedy those Evils which *Constantius* and *Galerius* had occasion'd by their ill Conduct.

Q. What Answer did Dioclesian return him?

A. Shewing him the Coleworts growing in his Garden, he told him he took a greater Pleasure to plant them, than to govern the Empire.

Q. What Courses did Maximian take, finding himself despised and neglected by all the World?

A. He withdrew to his Daughter, who was the Wife of *Constantius*; and endeavouring to engage her to poison her own Husband, she discovered his Perfidiousness to *Constantius*, who caused him to be slain.

Galerius and Constantius, making together the Forty-fifth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 1044. Of the Birth of J. C. 304.

Q. WHEN were Galerius and Constantius proclaim'd Emperors?

A. They did not take Possession of the Empire, till *Dioclesian* and *Maximian* had abdicated.

Q. What were they before they were advanced to that Honour?

A. They were only *Cesars*.

Q. How did they divide the Empire between them?

A. Constantius contented himself with Britain and Gaul, and Galerius had the rest of the Roman Empire for his Share.

Q. What did Galerius do when he found himself unable to support so weighty a Charge?

A. He associated Severus and Maximian with himself, whom he created Cæsars.

Q. What Governments did he bestow upon them?

A. He gave the Government of Italy to Severus; that of the East to Maximian; and as for his own Share, he contented himself with Illyrium.

Q. What was Constantius's Character?

A. He was of an agreeable, sweet, merciful Disposition: But as for Galerius, he was of a quite contrary Temper; he declar'd himself a mortal Enemy of the Christians, and massacred a whole Town of them in Phrygia; nay, he would fain have engaged Constantius to persecute them.

Q. What Judgments did these Cruelties draw down upon his Head?

A. God permitted him to be seized by an infamous and nasty Disease; during which he saw himself devoured alive by Worms, and so died.

Q. How did Constantius behave himself?

A. Making as if he really design'd to persecute the Christians, he commanded all the Officers of his Household, who were Christians, to change their Religion, otherwise they should lose their Places.

Q. And were any of them so faint-hearted and wavering as to prefer the renouncing of their Religion before the Loss of their Employments?

A. Several of them were so; but the Emperor sent them away with Disgrace; saying, That those who were not true to their God, would never be faithful to their Prince.

Q. How

Q. How did he treat those that continued firm in their Religion?

A. He kept them still in his Service, and highly commended their Fidelity.

Q. How long did Constantius possess the Empire?

A. Two Years, after which he died at York between the Arms of his Son Constantine the Great.

Q. Whom did Constantius leave his Successor behind him?

A. His Son Constantine the Great, who signalized himself exceedingly by his Courage, and a thousand noble Actions.

Q. Wherein did he particularly distinguish himself from his Predecessors?

A. In that he was the first Emperor that embraced the Christian Faith.

Constantine the Great, the Forty-sixth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 1046. Of the Birth of J. C. 306.

Q. WHO was the Mother of Constantine the Great?

A. Helena; whom some Historians make a British Woman, but with what Probability let the Learned judge.

Q. Why was the Surname of Great confer'd upon him?

A. For his great Exploits and Performances in War. He was the first Christian Emperor.

Q. What happen'd in the Course of his Life?

*A. The News of his being Emperor having arrived at Rome, Maxentius, the Son of that Her-
culianus who had renounced the Empire, was
elected and proclaimed Emperor.*

Q. How

Q. How did Maxentius behave himself in the Beginning of his Reign?

A. At first he seem'd to favour the Christians, in order to bring them over to his Party by this Means; but he did not treat them long after this Manner, for he persecuted them with a thousand Cruelties, and render'd himself odious by abundance of other Crimes.

Q. What was the Consequence of these Barbarities?

A. He was defeated by *Constantine the Great*; and God, who was pleas'd by a Miracle to draw this mighty Prince to the true Faith, shew'd him a Cross in the Air, to convince this victorious Emperor that it was the crucified Jesus who made him triumph over the Tyrant *Maxentius*.

Q. What did Constantine do after this?

A. He gave his Sister in Marriage to *Licinius*, who requited him very ill for this Honour; for without any Provocation he declared War against him; nor was so advantageous an Alliance able to make him live in good Terms with *Constantine*.

Q. How came he off at last?

A. He was defeated, but his Wife, by her continual Intercession, obtain'd of *Constantine* that he shou'd not be put to Death for his Crimes.

Q. And did Constantine yield to his Sister's Intreaties?

A. Yes, and was contented only with banishing him to *Thessalonica*.

Q. Did Licinius continue long without attempting to make some Disturbance?

A. No; for the next Year he rais'd new Com-motions, and in this second Sedition was killed in the Place of his Exile.

Q. What had Constantine to do after he had put an End to these Civil Wars?

A.

A. He had enough to manage his own Family, where he had some Affairs that gave him abundance of uneasy Moments, and sensibly touch'd him.

Q. What happen'd to him there?

A. *Fausta*, the Wife of this great Prince, became passionately in Love, even to Madness, with *Crispus*, who was *Cæsar*, and Son to *Constantine* by his first Wife, and attempted by her Careffes to induce him to answer her brutal Passion.

Q. How did she succeed in her Amours?

A. She try'd all Efforts, but vainly, to debauch this young Prince, who possess'd as great a Share of Virtue as she did of Beauty.

Q. What Courses did this Woman take, finding herself so despis'd?

A. Her Love being changed into Hatred, carried her to those Extremities against this innocent Prince, that she accused him before the Emperor with a Design to force her.

Q. What Credit did this Accusation find?

A. She had Authority enough with the Emperor to be believ'd; and *Crispus*, tho' wholly guiltless of the Matter, was condemned to die, which was accordingly executed.

Q. And did this Wickedness continue long unpunished?

A. No; for the young Prince's Innocence was discovered some time after, and then *Constantine*, by Way of Retaliation, justly put the Empress to Death.

Q. What glorious Things did *Constantine* do in his Reign?

A. He enriched and adorned, *An. Dom.* 336, the City of *Constantinople* (which took its new Name from him, but before was called *Byzantium*)

tium) so magnificently with the Spoils of his Enemies, that it went by the Name of *New Rome*, as the Country of *Thrace*, where it still stands, goes by the Name of *Romelia*.

Q. What warlike Exploits did this Prince perform?

A. He defeated his Enemies, and particularly overthrew the Sarmatians in several Parts of the Roman Empire.

Q. Did he live any long Time after his Conquests?

A. No; he died on Whitsunday, in the Year of our Lord 337, in the Suburbs of Nicomedia, where he had received Baptism.

Q. From whose Hands did he receive Baptism?

A. He was baptized by Pope Sylvester.

Q. Was not the Nicene Council celebrated in his Reign?

A. Arius, a Presbyter of Alexandria, having denied the Divinity of our blessed Saviour, Constantine, to oppose the farther spreading of this Heresy, in the Year 325 summons a Council of Bishops, which consisted in all of three hundred and eighteen, to meet at Nice, a City in Bithynia, where they made Arius recant his impious Doctrine, and compiled the Nicene Creed.

Q. What other remarkable Things happened in his Time?

A. His Mother Helena, a Woman of much Piety, but mixt with a great deal of Superstition, which now began openly to infect the Church, is reported to have found the very Cross on which Jesus Christ suffered. In Memory of which Invention, the Roman Church keeps a solemn Festival on the third of May.

Q. What learned Men flourished now?

A. Lactantius, the worthy Disciple of Arnobius,

bis, and Preceptor to *Crispus*, *Constantine's* Son, employ'd his Eloquence, of which he was a great Master, in confuting the Errors of Paganism, and defending the Truth of the Christian Religion.

Q. How many Wives had Constantine?

A. Two, the latter was Fausta, the Daughter of Maximian.

Q. How many Children had he by Fausta?

A. Three Sons, Constantine, Constans, and Constantius; and two Daughters, whose Names were Flavia Julia Constantina, and Helena.

Q. What did he leave to these three Princes?

A. He was so overseen in his Politicks, as to commit that unpardonable Solecism of leaving them all three Joint-Heirs of his Empire, which they divided among them.

Q. What had the Eldest for his Dividend?

A. He had for his Share Gaul, and all beyond the Alps.

Q. What had Constans?

A. He possess'd Rome, Italy, Africk, Sicily, and the other Isles, Sclavonia, Thrace, Macedonia, and Greece.

Q. What fell to Constantius's Share?

A. He was Master of Asia, of the East, and of Egypt.

Q. Give me a Description of Constantine the Great?

*A. He had a noble Air, a great Soul; he was sincere, valiant and modest, well skilled in the Latin and Greek Languages, an excellent Horseman, bold, but provident in all his Enterprizes; full faced, he had a thick Neck, his Nose somewhat flat, his Eyes sparkling, his Hair thin; he shav'd all his Beard, which none of his Predecessors, from *Adrian*, used to do.*

Q. How

Q. How many Brothers do they say Constantine the Great had?

A. Two, viz. Constans, the Father of Julian, and Dalmatius, who left two Sons behind him, one of whom, named likewise Dalmatius, was created Cæsar in the Year of our Lord 335.

Q. What was the Name of Dalmatius's second Son?

A. Annibalianus.

The Division of the Empire between the three Sons of Constantine the Great, making together the Forty-seventh Emperor.

The Year of Rome 1077. Of the Birth of J. C. 337.

Q. WHAT were the Names of these three Sons?

A. The first was called Constantine, the second Constantinus, and the third Constans.

Q. After they had divided the Empire between themselves, how did they manage Affairs?

A. They fell at Variance, which occasion'd bloody Civil Wars, each of them being desirous to enlarge his Territories; but they were all destroy'd at last, one after another.

Q. Where was Constantine the younger born?

A. At Arles, and was created Cæsar in the Year 317, but he held the Consulship almost four Months.

Q. Upon whom did he make War?

A. Upon his Brother Constans; and thinking to take away those Provinces from him, which he possess'd by the Dividend which his Father made of the Empire, he marched with his Forces
into

into *Italy*, where he was slain, and thrown into the River *Alfa*, near *Aquileia*, where *Constans* was at that Time.

Q. How old was he when this Accident besel him?

A. Twenty-five Years old, and had reigned three of them.

Q. What did *Constans* inherit by his Death?

A. He had *Gaul*, *Spain*, and *Great-Britain*.

Q. When was *Constans*, third Son to *Constantine the Great*, according to *Historians*, created *Cæsar*?

A. Upon *Christmas-Day*, in the Year 333.

Q. What were the first Exploits that *Constans* performed?

A. He vanquished the *Franks*, and compell'd them to make an Alliance with him; his great Merits, and the Sweetness of his Temper, being invincible Charms, that drew the Affections of all Mankind after him.

Q. What do you particularly observe of him in History?

A. He always took the Part of the *Orthodox* against the *Arians*, who disturbed the Tranquility of the Church.

Q. Did any unfortunate Accident besal this Prince?

A. *Magnentius* who had usurped the Empire, put him to Death in *Elna*, a City in *Roussillon*, in the Year 350; he was then about 30 Years old, and had reign'd 13 of them.

Q. When was *Constantius*, the second Son of *Constantine the Great*, created *Cæsar*?

A. In the Year 324; but he dishonoured this high Dignity by murdering several of his Relations, as also by espousing and professing the *Arian* Heresy: for suffering himself to be seduced by
the

the Flatteries of his Wife, and the Insinuations of some Hereticks, he persecuted the Church, and banish'd the Orthodox Bishops.

Q. Upon whom did Constantius make War?

A. Upon Sapore's King of Persia, a great Persecutor of the Christians; but Constantius had the worst in all the Battels and all the Sieges he was engaged in.

Q. Who was it that got himself declared Emperor by the Army in Hungary?

A. Vetranio, at the same Time when Magnentius usurp'd the Sovereign Authority.

Q. What Care did Constantius take to oppose his Designs?

A. He march'd Westwards to fight Vetranio, and oblig'd Magnentius to retire into Lyons, where he laid violent Hands upon himself.

Q. After Constantius had made himself sole Master of the Empire, how did he behave himself?

A. He became so insolent, that he once more began to persecute the Catholick Prelates, so that the Church was in a very miserable Condition under this detestable Prince.

Q. How stood the Affairs of the Church in his Time?

A. Arianism almost universally prevail'd; and only the Bishop of Rome and St. Athanasius, who compiled the Creed bearing his Name, were left to stem the Tide.

Q. When was Julian, afterwards surnamed the Apostate, made Cæsar?

A. In the Year 355; and having beaten the Barbarians out of Gaul, he was saluted Emperor about the Year 360, and marched with his Army toward the East.

Q. What Measures did Constantius take when he

he heard he was in Illyrium, and was marching directly against him?

A. He changed his Design of an Expedition he had projected against the Persians, and came back from Antioch to Tarsus, where he first felt his Fever, and from thence to Mopsuesta in Cilicia, so called from the Fountains of Mopsus, where he died.

Q. How old was he then?

A. Forty Years, and had reigned in all 25 Years, 3 Months, and 15 Days.

Julian the Apostate, the Forty-eighth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 1101. Of the Birth of J. C. 361.

Q. WHO succeeded Constantius in the Empire?

A. Julian the Apostate.

Q. Where was he born?

A. In Byzantium, in the Year 331.

Q. Whose Son was he?

A. The Son of Constans, Brother to Constantine the Great, and of Basilina.

Q. Whom did he marry?

A. Helena.

Q. Why was he surnamed the Apostate?

A. Because he turned Pagan, after he had been educated in the Christian Religion, and had read the Holy Scriptures in the Church before the Congregation.

Q. When was he sole Emperor?

A. In the Year 363 he was proclaimed Augustus by his Soldiers, but he had been created Caesar before his Election to the Empire.

Q. Where

Q. Where was he proclaimed Emperor?

A. At Paris.

Q. What did he do in the Beginning of his Reign?

A. He put all the Friends of Constantius to Death, or sent them into Banishment; he only encouraged the *Augurs*, the *Victimarii*, and the Philosophers; he ordered the idolatrous Temples of the Heathens to be opened, and having renounced the Faith, he assumed the Title of *Pontifex Maximus*. Nor was this all; for the more to vex the Christians, he made scandalous Condescensions to the Jews, and began to erect a Temple for them at *Jerusalem*, which he was obliged soon to leave off: for Globes of Fire breaking out from under the Foundations, disturbed the Workmen; as *Ammianus Marcellinus*, a Pagan Writer, witnesses.

Q. What befel him upon this?

A. He became the Laughter and Contempt of the People of *Antioch*.

Q. What Course did he take to revenge the Affront they put upon him?

A. He wrote a satirick Letter upon this Occasion, called the *Misopogon*, or Beard-hater.

Q. Upon whom did Julian make War?

A. Upon the *Persians*; but having after the second Battle insolently refused to comply with the just Articles of Peace which they offered him, and burnt the Ships that followed him, and carried Provisions for the Army, he was surrounded on all Sides by the Enemy.

Q. What became of him at last?

A. He had the Mortification to find himself cut off from all Hopes of Assistance, and was wounded by an Arrow in the Fight, but 'twas never known from what Side it came.

Q. Did

Q. Did he say any Thing as he was dying ?

A. He desperately took a Handful of Blood which gushed from the Wound, and throwing it up into the Air, cried out, *Vicisti, Galilee ? O Galilean, thou hast at last overcome me.*

Q. What did he mean by these Words ?

A. That our blessed Saviour, whom he had so often provoked by his Sacrileges, and other Indignities, and whom now he found to his Cost to be the great Judge of the Universe, would take a full Vengeance for the Crimes and Blasphemies he had uttered against his Sacred Person.

Q. What sort of a Man was Julian the Apostate ?

A. He had sparkling Eyes, a stern wandering Countenance, a strait Nose, his Mouth somewhat of the biggest, a Slit in his under Lip, a thick Beard, which he wore picked, his Shoulders large and moving, his Head hanging down, which he always turned on one and t'other Side ; he walked very fast, altho' he was but little, and made a great Noise when he laughed. How great a Warrior he was, the *Alemains, Franks, and Saxons*, whom he overcame, do testify ; and his remaining Works are undeniable Proofs of his Wit and Ingenuity.

Jovian, the Forty-ninth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 1103. Of the Birth of J. C. 363.

Q. WHO was proclaimed Emperor after the Death of Julian the Apostate ?

A. Jovian, the Son of Count *Varronianus*.

Q. Whom did he marry ?

A. *Chritas*, the Daughter of *Lucillianus*, by whom he had a Son named *Varro*, whom he made Consul.

Q.

Q. What do Historians tell us of this Prince?

A. That he was a handsome well-shaped Man, illustrious for his Birth, but more for his Piety.

Q. What did he principally apply himself to in the Beginning of his Reign?

A. To draw the Soldiers from Superstition. He commanded Jesus Christ to be adored by all those Soldiers who had abandoned his Worship.

Q. Was he engaged in any Wars?

A. No; for in the Condition he found the Army after the Defeat and Death of *Julian*, he was obliged to make a Truce of thirty Years with *Sapores*, to whom he yielded the greatest Part of *Mesopotamia*.

Q. Did he live long after this?

A. No; he died of a Sickness in the thirty-third Year of his Age, after he had reigned seven Months, twenty-two Days.

Q. What particular Things were done in his Reign?

A. He generally cancelled all the Edicts of the Apostate, which were favourable to the Pagans; he restored to the Faithful, and to the Churches, all their Goods, their Honours, their Revenues, and their Privileges.

Valentinian the Great, the Fiftieth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 1104. Of the Birth of J. C. 364.

Q. WHO was named Emperor after the Death of Jovian?

A. The Army chose *Valentinian* Emperor at *Nice*, because in *Julian's* Time he had prefer'd his Religion to his Preferment.

Q. What

Q. What did he do as soon as he saw himself possess'd of the Imperial Throne?

A. He made his Brother Valens his Partner in the Empire, and gave him the Government of the East.

Q. What Part did he reserve for himself?

A. The West.

Q. What sort of a Man was Valentinian?

A. He was a very virtuous Prince, and a strict Observer of Justice; very ingenious, and a religious Keeper of his Word.

Q. With whom did he make War?

A. With the Saxons and Sarmatians, whom he defeated, and oblig'd them to demand a Peace by their Ambassadors, whom they sent to him.

Q. And what said Valentinian to them?

A. He fell into such a Fit of Anger, to which he was always very subject, that he was seiz'd with an Apoplexy.

Q. Did he die of it?

A. Yes, in Hungary, being 55 Years old.

Q. How many Years did he reign?

A. Twelve Years.

Q. Was he baptized before his Death?

A. No; nevertheless he did not forbear to give sensible Proofs of the Religion he profess'd, and commanded the Pagan Temples to be shut.

Valens, the Fifty-first Emperor.

The Year of Rome 1104. Of the Birth of J. C. 364.

Q. WHAT Enemy had Valens to fight with in the Beginning of his Empire?

A. Procopius, who was related to Julian, and was his greatest Enemy.

Q. Did Valens make War against him ?

A. The Dispute between them was bloody, but at the Upshot *Valens* defeated *Procopius*, took him Prisoner, and put him to Death.

Q. What other Wars was he involved in ?

A. He had a continual War with the *Goths*, till their King, *Athalaricus*, having begg'd a Peace of him, he granted it, and afterwards kindly entertain'd him ; till such Time as being persecuted by the *Huns*, he came to desire this Emperor's Protection, who settled him in *Thrace*.

Q. How did the Goths behave themselves at that Time ?

A. Not being able to bear the insufferable Avarice of *Lupicinus*, their Governor, they took up Arms against the *Romans*, and invaded *Thrace*.

Q. What memorable Things happen'd in the Course of this War ?

A. *Valens* fell into the Hands of his Enemies, who burnt him in a Cottage.

Q. How old was he when this Accident befel him ?

A. He was fifty Years old, and had reign'd fourteen Years and four Months.

Q. What Qualities were observable in him ?

A. He had both good and bad ones ; he was cholerick, cruel, envious. The *Arian* Heresy, with which he was infected, corrupted all his other good Inclinations.

Q. What Learned Men flourish'd in his Time ?

A. *Gregory* and *Basil*, who had contracted a Friendship in their Youth at *Athens*, where they follow'd their Studies : The former born at *Nazianzum* in *Cappadocia*, from whence surnamed *Nazianzenus* ; the other born in *Pontus*, and afterwards made Bishop of *Cesarea*.

Q. What

Q. What Act of Cruelty did he ever commit ?

A. He put all People to Death who had the Curiosity to know the Name of his Successor; and being inform'd that the first Letters of his Name were to begin with *Theod*, he put to Death old *Theodosius*, the Father of *Theodosius* the Great, who was afterwards *Valentinian's* Successor.

Q. What considerable Actions had that illustrious old Man perform'd ?

A. He had done the State great Service by his Counsels, beaten the *Picts* and *Scots* out of *Britain*, and defeated *Firminus* the Tyrant, who ravag'd *Africk* with an Army of *Moors*.

Q. How many Children had Valentinian, the Brother of Valens ?

A. Two, the first named *Gratianus*, who was declared *Augustus* by his Father in the City of *Amiens*.

Q. What was the second Son's Name ?

A. He was called *Valentinian* the Younger, to distinguish him from his Father.

Q. What do Historians tell us of Valentinian the Younger ?

A. That after the Death of his Father he was declar'd *Augustus*, at the Age of ten Years, by the Soldiers, as well as by his Brother *Gratian*.

Gratian, the Fifty-second Emperor.

The Year of Rome 1115. Of the Birth of J. C. 375.

Q. WHAT Qualities was Gratian Master of ?

A. He had a Body well made, and a Soul of a vast Extent and great Elevation.

Q. Don't Historians observe some Defects in him ?

A. He had some, but such as would not have appear'd so conspicuous in an indifferent Fortune; he had an incurable Aversion to State-Affairs, which ought to have taken up his most serious Moments.

Q. Did not this sink his Reputation mightily with his Subjects?

A. Yes; and what they could not suffer but with the utmost Indignation, was to see him frequently prefer a *Barbarian Soldier* to a *Roman*, altho' the *Roman* was the elder of the two, and had more Merits to plead.

Q. How did he manage Matters after the Death of Valens?

A. He took as Partner in the Empire with him *Theodosius*, the Grandson of that *Theodosius* who was slain by the Order of *Valens*.

Q. What forced him upon this Conduct?

A. Because he found himself not strong enough to support so furious a War as he was then engaged in; and besides, the *Goths* ravaged *Thrace*, and the other Provinces of the Empire, at Pleasure.

Theodosius the Great, the Fifty-third Emperor.

The Year of Rome 1132. Of the Birth of J. C. 392.

Q. **H**OW old was *Theodosius* when he was taken Partner into the Empire?

A. He was thirty-three Years old, and his first Appearance on the Imperial Seat gave sufficient Proof of his Courage and Prudence.

Q. Where was he born?

A. In Spain, at *Lauca*, a Town of *Galiccia*. He imitated all the Virtues, but none of the Vices,

ces, of his Countryman *Trajan*. He summon'd the second Oecumenical Council (that of *Nice* being the first) at *Constantinople*, An. Dom. 381, wherein, besides the Confirmation of the *Nicene* Council by an hundred and fifty Bishops, *Macedonius* the Heretick was condemn'd, and the Orthodox Belief concerning the Holy Ghost established.

Q. What memorable Exploits did he perform?

A. He vanquished all the Enemies of the Roman Name, and gave Peace to his Subjects.

Q. Was not this Prince a sure Asylum to all Kings that were persecuted, and in Distress?

A. Yes; he supported them against all those who conspir'd the Destruction and the Subversion of their Governments.

Q. What Instances can you give of this his great Generosity?

A. *Albanaricus*, King of the *Goths*, being turned out of his Kingdom by his own rebellious Subjects, fled to *Constantinople*, where he was very honourably receiv'd by *Theodosius*.

Q. Did that Prince enjoy the Emperor's Favours any considerable Time?

A. No; for tho' he had escaped Death in so many Battles, yet he ended his Days when he expected to pass the Remainder of his Life in great Tranquillity.

Q. Was not Theodosius concern'd at the Loss of him?

A. He would receive no manner of Consolation; nay, he was so profuse in the Celebration of his Funeral, that it was no less magnificent than what was used to be kept for any deceased Emperors.

Q. Were not the Goths mightily astonished at this?

A. It made so deep an Impression upon them, that seeing themselves without a Master, they were unanimously of Opinion that they could not find a better than *Theodosius*.

Q. Did the Goths then submit themselves to this great Prince?

A. Yes; and he distributed Lands among them for their Maintenance with great Liberality.

Q. What remarkable Matters happened after this?

A. The Tyrant *Maximus* made himself Master of *Britain* and *Gaul*, and chose *Triers* for his Capital City.

Q. What Acts of Cruelty did that Usurper commit?

A. He put the unfortunate *Gratian* to Death at *Lyons*, who was twenty-five Years old.

Q. Did not *Theodosius* revenge his Death?

A. Yes; and placed young *Valentinian* (who had been forc'd out of *Italy*) upon his Throne again.

Q. As to the Business of Religion, how did he behave himself?

A. He reconcil'd himself to the Church, and to the great *St. Ambrose*; and notwithstanding all the Efforts of the *Arians* to corrupt his Principles, and engage him in their Party, yet he still continued to adhere to the ancient Truth.

Q. What Character do Historians bestow upon him?

A. That he was inferior to none of his Predecessors either in Virtue or Merit; that he never made War but out of mere Necessity; and was successful in all his Military Undertakings: In fine, that his Goodness charm'd all the World,
and

and his engaging Behaviour gain'd him the Hearts of all that approach'd him.

Q. What was his chief Infirmary?

A. He was naturally cholerick, but he seldom suffer'd his Passion to get the better of him; and then, after some short Intervals, it was no difficult Matter to appease him. He had once design'd utterly to destroy the City of *Antioch*, for taking down the Statue of *Augusta Placilla*, but was at last persuaded by their Bishop *Flavianus* to pardon them. At another Time he massacred seven thousand Men in a Theatre at *Theſſalonica*, for killing their President.

Q. Which was the last Victory that Theodosius obtain'd?

A. 'Twas that which he gain'd over *Eugenius*, whose Troops had join'd those of *Arbogastes*, who had caus'd *Valentinian* to be strangled in his own Palace at *Vienne* in *Dauphine*.

Q. Theodosius then vanquish'd these two Tyrants?

A. Yes; and 'twas rather by a particular Protection of Heaven, than any human Strength.

Q. What became of them?

A. *Eugenius* was taken Prisoner, and *Arbogastes* kill'd himself.

Q. Did Theodosius the Great live long after these Victories?

A. No; for shortly after this generous Prince died at *Milan*, *A. D.* 395, being fifty Years old, according to the common Opinion.

Q. To whom did he bequeath his Empire?

A. He divided it between his two Sons *Arcadius* and *Honorius*.

Q. What had Arcadius for his Share?

A. He had the Empire of the *East*, and *Honorius* that of the *West*.

Q. What eminent Men flourish'd under his Reign?

A. St. Jerome, so profoundly skill'd in the Hebrew Tongue, to whom the learned World is highly oblig'd for his great Performances upon the Scriptures; St. Ambrose, Bishop of Milan, who employ'd his Eloquence against the Arians; St. Austin, Bishop of Hippo in Africk, the most universally learned Father of the Latin Church; Ausonius, a famous Poet and Orator, and Master to the Emperor Gratian, who rewarded him with the Consulate; Paulinus, Bishop of Nola in Campania, who is first reported to have put Bells to a sacred Use; from whence they are called Nola and Campanæ.

Arcadius, the Fifty-fourth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 1135. Of the Birth of J. C. 395.

Q. WHOM did Arcadius marry?

A. Eudoxia, whom he suffer'd to govern absolutely as she thought fit; the Consequences of which had like to have prov'd as fatal to Religion, as it did to the Empire; for she banish'd St. Chrysostom, who had been translated from the See of Antioch to Constantinople, only for inveighing against her Vices.

Q. Whom did he intrust at his Death to be his Son's Guardian?

A. Isdigerdes, King of Persia, who acquitted himself very honourably in this Trust; for he placed him under the Tuition of the learned and wise Antiochus: Nay, he openly declared that whoever attempted any thing against the Interest

rest and Welfare of this young Prince, must expect to find him his Enemy.

Q. How old was he when he died?

A. He died in the one and thirtieth Year of his Age, and in the eleventh of his, or rather his Wife's Reign, who died in Child-bed.

Honorius, the Fifty-fifth Emperor.

The Year of Rome 1135. Of the Birth of J. C. 395.

Q. GIVE me the true Character of Honorius.

A. He was of a sweet agreeable Disposition, but an Enemy to Application and Business; he even had an Aversion to publick Affairs; however he was very zealous for the Christian Religion, in Favour of which he made several Edicts.

Q. What remarkable Things happen'd in his Reign?

A. After the *Goths* had spread themselves all over *Italy*, and were Masters of the City of *Rome*, several Tyrants usurp'd the Sovereign Authority.

Q. Whom did these Tyrants nominate for their Emperor?

A. *Attalus*, the Son of *Alaricus*. *Honorius* offered to make him his Partner in the Empire, which he refus'd with a great deal of Scorn and Arrogance, and yet accepted the Imperial Dignity after it was offer'd to him by the Senate.

Q. Did he long possess the Empire?

A. No; he was soon strip'd of it, and being abandon'd by the *Gauls*, to whom he fled for Protection, he was taken Prisoner by *Constantius*, A. D. 415, and delivered to the Justice of the Emperor *Honorius*.

Q. And how did he use him?

K 5

A. He

A. He gave him his Life, and contented himself only with cutting off one of his Hands.

Q. Why did he serve him so?

A. That this Rebel, for the Remainder of his Life, might carry the Punishment of his Crime about him, and have everlastingly before his Eyes the Marks of his Rebellion.

Q. What memorable Accidents happen'd after this?

A. One *Constantine* that commanded the Guards, and had nothing to recommend him but only his Name, was declar'd Emperor; but being taken Prisoner, was strangled at *Ravenna*. Then *Jovian* and *Sebastian* possess'd themselves of *Gaul*, but being seiz'd at *Narbo*, were both put to Death.

Q. Who was it that afterwards usurped the Empire of the Gauls?

A. *Heraclius*, who pass'd into *Italy* with a Navy of seven hundred Sail; but being beaten there, he made his Escape to *Carthage*, where he was strangled.

Q. What other Matters happen'd after the Death of these Tyrants?

A. The *Goths* entred *France*, under the Conduct of their King *Ataulphus*.

Q. How old was the Emperor *Honorius* when he died of his Dropsy?

A. Fifty-five Years, A. D. 425.

Q. What sort of a Reign was his?

A. Nothing but a continued Scene of Troubles, Commotions, Tumults, and Wars, occasion'd by the *Vandals*, the *Hunns*, and other barbarous Nations, that daily pour'd new Swarms of People into the *Roman* Provinces. About 413 the *Burgundians* erected a new Kingdom towards the *Rhone*: The *Franks* in 420, erected another
in

in Gaul, from them call'd *France*, under their first King *Pharamond* : And the Year following *Vallia*, King of the *Goths*, after the Death of *Ataulphus*, constituted a Kingdom in *Spain*. The *Vandals* possessed that Part of it which was formerly called *Bætica*, and now from them *Andalusia* ; as the *Goths*, in Conjunction with the *Alani*, fix'd themselves in *Provincia Tarracoenensis*, which was afterwards called *Gothalandia*, and corruptly *Catalonia*. The Beginning of the *Scottish* Kingdom too is generally placed about the Year of our Lord 422 ; the *Scots* from *Ireland* settling themselves in the Northern Parts of Great Britain, under their King *Fergus*.

Q. *What learned Men lived about these Times ?*

A. *Pelagius*, a Britain, a warm Asserter of the Omnipotency of Free-will, and as violent a Depressor of God's Grace, whom *St. Austin* encountred so vigorously. *Prudentius*, *Sedulius*, and *Paulinus*, famous for Poetry, but infinitely exceeded by *Claudian*, who rais'd his Reputation as much by the Elegance and Sweetness of his Versification, as he lessen'd it by the Meanness of his Subject.

Of the Fall and Decay of the Roman Empire.

Q. *WHAT were the principal Causes of the Decay of the Roman Empire ?*

A. Pride and Luxury, and the Divisions at home ; the frequent Mutinies of the Army, who deposed their Emperors at Pleasure ; and the perpetual Invasions of the Northern Nations.

Q. *Who caused the greatest Desolations in the Empire ?*

A. The

A. The *Goths*, the *Hunns*, the *Lombards*, and *Vandals*, who in their Turn ravag'd the several Provinces of it, erected new Kingdoms, and establish'd their Laws and Customs where-ever they came.

Q. By whom was Rome taken ?

A. It was taken and retaken by *Alarick*, King of the *Goths*, *A. D.* 410, and about 1163 Years after the building of it. For the Space of three Days, the Imperial City, which for nine hundred Years had defied the Attacks of all its Enemies, even of *Hannibal* himself, was ravag'd and plunder'd at the Discretion of the barbarous Conquerors. Not long after it was taken by *Attila*, and after him by *Theodoricus*, who made so magnificent an Entry into it, that *St. Austin*, wholly astonish'd at so prodigious a Show, wish'd that he had seen three Things upon Earth.

Q. What were they ?

A. *Jesus Christ* in the Flesh, *St. Paul* in the Pulpit, and ancient *Rome* in its Splendor.

Q. Did not the Roman Empire for some Time make a happy Progress ?

A. It advanced rather than decreased from *Julius Caesar* down to *Nero* ; but afterwards *Galba*, *Otho*, and *Vitellius*, so weaken'd it by their Civil Wars, that it was scarce in a Condition to preserve itself from the Insults of its Enemies.

Q. Who restored this Empire to its ancient Splendor ?

A. In *Trajan's* Time, as it possessed the greatest Extent of Ground, so it visibly recover'd its former Reputation. From that Period, it by Degrees declined, till the Time of *Constantine the Great*, who by putting an End to all intestine Broils, retrieved in some Manner its ancient Credit ; but thro'

thro' a fatal ill Management, he did it a greater Injury at last than all his Predecessors before him.

Q. How did that happen?

A. First he transplanted the Seat of the Empire from *Rome*, where it had so long inhabited, to *Constantinople*, by which Means he abandoned *Italy*, and the Provinces which lie nearest it, to the Invasion of the *Barbarians*; and what was equally dangerous, to the ambitious Attempts of the Bishops of *Rome*, who had always a mighty hankering after Temporals. Next he considerably enfeebled it, by dividing it between his three Sons.

Q. How long did the Eastern Empire continue?

A. From the Sons of *Constantine the Great* for the Space of 1200 Years, or thereabout, to *Constantine Paleologus*, the last Emperor of *Constantinople*, who was prest to Death in the Crowd, when *Mahomet the Second*, Emperor of the *Turks*, took the City of *Constantinople*, in the Year of the Creation of the World 5505, and of the Birth of J. C. 1453.

Q. How long was the Empire of the East in the Possession of the French?

A. Fifty-six Years, viz. from the Year 1204, to 1260.

Q. How came it to fall into the Hands of the French?

A. By the Valour of *Baldwin*, Earl of *Flanders*, who made himself Emperor of *Constantinople*; and it was retaken by another *Baldwin*, the fourth of that Name.

Q. In whose Hands did the Western Empire continue?

A. The Emperors of *Constantinople* endeavour'd all they could to keep it under their Obedience,

ence, and for that End sent their Deputies there, who had continual Brigues and Quarrels with the Popes; so that at last they had no manner of Authority or Credit in *Italy*, about the Time that *Charlemagne* was King of *France*.

Q. How did that happen?

A. Pope *Leo III.* finding himself now in a Capacity to exercise that Power of disposing of Empires, which his Predecessors had so long thirsted after; and besides, having great Obligations to the *French* Nation, who had protected the Holy See from the Insults of the *Lombards*, promoted *Charles* the Great to the Empire of the *West*.

Q. By whom was he proclaimed Emperor?

A. By the Consent of all the Estates; viz. the Clergy, Nobility, and People, the Pope himself placing the Imperial Crown upon his Head.

Q. When did this happen?

A. On *Christmas-Day*, in *St. Peter's Church* at *Rome*, in the Year of our Lord 801.

Q. And did this famous Conqueror acquit himself worthily in his Place?

A. He lived fourteen Years after his Elevation to this Dignity, and reign'd with that universal Esteem of the World, that they were used to say of him, *He was a Conqueror like Cæsar, Peaceable like Augustus, and a Restorer of the Church, like Constantine.* He summoned a Council at *Frankfort*, where the Use of Images in Churches, confirmed by the second Council of *Nice*, was condemned: and he died at *Aix la Chapelle* in *Germany*, in the 72d Year of his Age.

Q. From whom did Conradus I. usurp the Imperial Crown?

A. From *Charles* the Simple, King of *France*, who was Grandson to *Charles* the Great, and the only

only Person left alive of the Race of that great Emperor.

Q. For what Reason do they say Leo III. excited the People to proclaim Charles the Great, and bestow the Empire upon him, and his Descendants and Successors, the Kings of France?

A. For their Piety and Zeal to Holy Church. Nay, Leo the Third solemnly protested he would excommunicate all those that should presume to disturb them in the Possession of the Imperial Dignity.

Q. Did it always continue in that Line?

A. No; for about fourscore and five Years after this, Pope Gregory V. a German by Nation, and Cousin German to the Emperor Otho III. of the House of Saxony, to perpetuate the Empire in those of his own Country, made the Decree which is commonly called the *Golden Bull*, because the Seal is made of that rich Metal.

Q. What did the Pope ordain in this Bull?

A. That only the Germans should have a Right to elect the Emperor; for which End he established six Electors, three Ecclesiastick and three Lay Princes. Others pretend they were establish'd long before, and that this Pope did only confirm them.

Q. Who are the Ecclesiastick Electors?

A. The Archbishops of Mentz, Cologne, and Triers, who are all Chancellors of the Empire, the first for Germany, the second for Italy, and the third for France.

Q. Who are the secular Electors?

A. 1. The Prince Palatine of the Rhine, Comptroller of the Household. 2. The Duke of Saxony, Master of the Horse. 3. The Duke of Brandenburg, Great Chamberlain.

Q. Was not one more added to the secular Electors?

A.

A. The King of *Bohemia* was taken into the Number at first, to be Arbitrator in the Case whenever the Votes fell equal on both Sides.

Q. And has no new Elector been added to them since?

A. Yes: for the Prince *Palatine* having forfeited his Electorate, which was given to the Duke of *Bavaria*, they constituted another for him at the Peace of *Munster*. Since the late Revolution in *England*, the Emperor has been induced to create a new Electorate in Favour of the Duke of *Hanover*, in Consideration of the great Services he has done the Empire, particularly in this present Confederacy against *France*; but as 'tis opposed by several Princes of the Empire, who have enter'd their respective Protestations against it, we cannot positively tell what will become of this Affair.

Q. Who was the first of the House of Austria that obtain'd the Empire?

A. *Rodolphus*, Earl of *Hapsburgh*, whom, after a tedious *Inter-regnum*, which had like to have proved fatal to the Empire, the Electors unanimously chose. He overcame *Ottocarus*, King of *Bohemia*, and in Consequence of that Victory, bestow'd *Austria* upon his Son *Albert*; and laid the Foundation of that powerful House, which has brought forth so many Emperors and Princes to *Europe*, and which ever since the Days of *Charles V.* who first projected the Election of the King of the *Romans*, has enjoy'd the Empire.

*Of the Increase, Purity, and Decay of
the Roman Eloquence and Learning.*

Q. *IN what Condition was the Roman Language at first?*

A. For the first five hundred Years, that is till they had made themselves Masters of *Italy*, it continued very unpolite and barren, and produced no Authors of Eminence and Note. Their Speech is a Corruption of the *Æolick Greek*, which was spoken in the Southern Provinces of that Country, called *Græcia Magna*, and now comprehends the Kingdom of *Naples*. Their Ecclesiastical Terms, as well as the Rites and Ceremonies, and whole Body of their Theology, were borrowed from the *Hetruscans*.

Q. *Who were the first Roman Authors?*

A. Not to mention those whose Works are lost, (for that would be an unnecessary Labour) *Plautus* and *Terence* have an establish'd Reputation; *Plautus* seems to have proposed *Aristophanes*, the Author of the Old Comedy, for his Pattern, as *Terence* copies *Menander*, and entertains us with the New.

Q. *What Alterations did it receive afterwards?*

A. From *Terence's* Time, who flourished after the second *Punick* War, and is the Standard of the *Latin* Dialogue and Conversation; by Reason of their frequent Commerce with the *Greeks* and other politer Nations, their Language daily improved in all other Parts. *Lucretius*, *Sallust*, and *Catullus*, who flourish'd a little before the Civil Wars between *Cæsar* and *Pompey*, as they wrote with a Purity equal or above any that preceded them, so they are excelled by few that followed

followed after; and *Tully* complains that much of the Force, and Spirit, and Majesty of their Language, was lost even in his Time. However, 'tis agreed on by most Hands, that in *Augustus's* Time it arrived to the highest Pitch of Perfection and Purity; at which Time, *Virgil*, *Horace*, *Ovid*, *Tibullus*, *Propertius*, *Corn. Gallus*, *Manilius*, (tho' others place him in the Reign of *Theodosius* the Younger) and not to mention any more, *Corn. Celsus* the Physician, and *Livy* the Historian, flourish'd.

Q. When did it begin to decline?

A. As by a Fate peculiar to all sublunary Things, nothing continues long in the same State, but either must advance or go backward, the Roman Language began to decline soon after *Augustus*. Now and then, 'tis true, steep up an extraordinary Genius, that in Spite of the Age he lived in, preserved the ancient Purity; as for Instance, *Minutius Felix*, under the Emperor *Severus*: but we have few Instances of this Nature. For the first hundred Years, and something more, it escaped tolerably well, but soon after *Trajan's* Time we find it was strangely corrupted.

Q. What Reasons are commonly assign'd for the Decay of their Eloquence and Language?

A. The former is generally ascrib'd to the Loss of their Liberty, and the Subversion of the old Government, which allowed a greater Latitude and Freedom of speaking than they enjoy'd under their Emperors. Several Reasons may be given for the latter; as first, their Affectation to incorporate so many *Greek* Words and Phrases into their Tongue; a Vanity complained of by *Juvenal*. In the Age before they seldom used them but in case of Necessity; and even then, as is
evident

evident from *Tully's* Example, they writ them in *Greek*, and not in *Latin* Characters.

Q. What other Causes are assign'd for it?

A. The continual Irruptions of the Northern Nations, who, like a mighty Torrent, swept every thing before them. Such prodigious Swarms of People still breaking in upon them, could not but occasion a vast Alteration in their Language. To this may be added, the introducing of a new Religion, *viz.* the Christian, in the Empire, the Professors of which brought in with them a new Set of Phrases and Words that were none of the politest, and wholly unknown before; as seeming always to have a greater Regard to the Truth of what they delivered, than to the Purity of their Diction.

Q. How did it fare after this?

A. From the 10th to the middle of the 15th Century, little or no Learning was stirring in these Western Parts of the World. The Monks, who were the only People that possess'd any Share of it, amusing themselves in the Study of School-Divinity, as 'tis commonly called; those that were the Historians in those Ages left nothing but miserable jejune Relations of Things behind them, larded with frequent Miracles of their Saints, which seem to have been written in Defiance of Eloquence as well as good Sense.

Q. How came it to revive again?

A. 'Twas occasion'd by two remarkable Accidents that happen'd within a short Space of one another. The first was the Invention of Printing at *Mentz* in *Germany*, in the Year 1440, by the Help of which, to the incredible Benefit of the learned World, we can print more Volumes in a Day, and that more correctly, than the Ancients could have written in a Year. The second

was

was the taking of *Constantinople* by the *Turks*, about twelve Years after, which forc'd several of the learned *Greeks* to quit their native Country, and come into *Italy*, where they were forced to teach *Greek* for their own Sustainance. Of this Number were *Theodorus Gaza*, *Constantinus Lascaris*, *Chalcondylas*, *Chrisoloras*, *Trapezuntius*, who began to revive the Study of that Language, which for the Space of five hundred Years had been perfectly buried.

Q. What Persons of Note encouraged Learning at that Time?

A. Pope *Nicholas* the Fifth, that great Friend to the Muses, and Restorer of Letters, employ'd the most learned Men of that Age to compare and revise the old Manuscripts, and print them; and we are particularly obliged to him for putting out *Polybius*. After him *Aeneas Sylvius*, alias Pope *Pius* the Second, who was himself a Man of great Learning, promoted it by his Example and Encouragement. About this Time the Art of Painting, which had been totally lost for so many Ages, began to flourish in *Italy*, and in the Compass of a hundred Years arrived to its highest Perfection.

Q. What were their principal Studies at this time?

A. To retrieve the Purity of the *Latin* and *Greek* Tongues, and learn their Antiquities; for which End they conversed with their politest Authors, compared various Reasons, turned over Glossaries and old *Scholia* upon ancient Historians, Orators, and Poets; consulted old Inscriptions, examined old Statues and *Basso Relievo's*; in which, as *Italy* abounded above all other Countries of *Europe*, so it furnished them with a better

better Opportunity to be skilled in the ancient Habits, Utenfils, Sacrifices, &c. than the rest of their Neighbours. The most eminent Men for this Sort of Learning, were *Laurentius Valla*, *Pomponius Letus*, *Alexander ab Alexandro*, *Rodolphus Agricola*.

Q. *How long was this Learning confined to Italy?*

A. Not long; for altho' the *Italians* had the Honour to revive it, and made a very considerable Progress in it, yet about the latter End of the 15th Century, when Copies of Books were pretty well multiplied by Printing, Learning cross'd the *Alps*, and soon after *Erasmus*, *Budeus*, *Beatus Rhenanus*, &c. dispersed that Sort of Knowledge thro' *England*, *France*, *Germany*, and the *Low Countries*.

Q. *What promoted this?*

A. In the Year 1519, *Luther* made a publick Defection from the Papal Authority, which, till then, was generally received without any manner of Examination. This Change of the Scene obliged both Parties, viz. those of the Reformation, and the Champions for the Church of *Rome*, to prosecute their Studies in the learned Languages vigorously. The former, to justify their Separation, and to prove that Antiquity was of their Side; and the latter, to keep their Ground still, and preserve the Remainder of their Credit and Interest with the People. When this Theological War was over, Men applied themselves to all other Parts of Learning; and in this last Age, Mathematical and Physical Sciences seem to have been the predominant Studies of the learned Men of *Europe*: Not but that a critical Skill in Antiquity was at the same Time pursued by several extraordinary Men, as Bishop *Usher*, Mr. *Selden*,
Sir

Sir John Marsbam, Mr. Gataker, and after them by Dr. Spencer, Isaac Vossius, Nic. Heinsius, Frederick Gronovius, Ezekiel Spanheim, and Grævius, Men even in this Part of Learning equal, if not superior, to any that cultivated it before 'em. In short, all manner of Learning seems at present to be better diffus'd in all Parts of Europe than ever it was; but whether the Genius's of this and the last are comparable to those immortal Heroes of Antiquity, truly so called, is a Controversy that cannot be conveniently discuss'd in so narrow a Compass as this Book will allow.



An Abridgment of the Principal Customs of the Romans.

Concerning their Months.

Q. INTO how many Parts did the Romans divide their Months?

A. Into three; the *Calends*, the *Nones*, and the *Ides*?

Q. From whence comes the Word *Calends*?

A. From the Word *καλέω*, to call, because on that Day the Pontiff summoned the People to tell 'em how many Days it was to the *Nones*. The *Calends* were peculiar to the Roman People; whence the Proverb, *ad Calendas Græcas*, i. e. Never.

Q. From whence were the *Nones* so called?

A. Because

A. Because they were the ninth Day before the *Ides*.

Q. And from whence are the *Ides* derived?

A. From the old *Tuscan* Word *Iduare*, which signifies to divide, because they divide the Month almost into two equal Parts.

Q. When began the *Calends*?

A. On the first Day of the Month.

Q. When began the *Nones*?

A. On the seventh Day of the following Months, viz. *March*, *May*, *July* and *October*, all which have one and thirty Days.

Q. When did the *Ides* begin?

A. On the fifteenth of the above-mentioned Months.

Q. And in the other Months, when came the *Nones* and the *Ides*?

A. The *Nones* on the fifth, and the *Ides* on the thirteenth.

Q. Thus the first Day was reckoned the *Calends*, as *Calendæ Januarii* is the first of January.

A. Right; and the second Day, if the Month had its *Nones* on the seventh Day, was called the sixth before the *Nones*; and if on the fifth, the fourth Day before the *Nones*: But the next Day immediately following the *Nones*, is in every Month alike called the eighth before the *Ides*.

Q. How many *Nones* have the Months of *May*, *July*, *October*, and *March*.

A. They have all six, the rest have only four; but all the Months in general have eight *Ides*.

Q. And after the *Ides* are over, how do you reckon them?

A. By the *Calends*, which are told backward, and named from the following Month.

Q. Pray give me an Instance of it?

I

A. A

A. As the 18th of the *Calends* of *May* is the 14th of *April*.

Q. Cannot you give me some artificial Verses to fix those Rules in my Memory?

A. Yes; they are as follow:

*Sex Maius Nonas, October, Julius, & Mars
Quatuor at reliqui; tenet Idus quilibet octo;
Inde dies reliquos omnes dic esse Calendas.*

Of the Roman Year, and Distinction of Days.

Q. INTO how many Months did Romulus divide his Year?

A. Into ten; and it consisted of 304 Days: But after him *Numa* added two Months, viz. *January* and *February*, and made his Year to contain three hundred fifty four Days; but this Computation falling out too short for the Space of a regular Year by ten Days and six Hours yearly, it occasioned every eighth Year an Interposition of three whole Months, which they called Leap-Year.

Q. What Alterations did Julius Cæsar make in the Roman Calendar?

A. He added the odd ten Days to *Numa Pompilius's* Year; and lest the odd six Hours should breed any Confusion, he order'd that every fourth Year one whole Day should be inserted next after the twenty-third of *February*.

Q. When did the old Romans begin their Year?

A. At *March*: for which reason those two Months, which in Honour of *Julius* and *Augustus* Cæsar have been since called *Julius* and *Augustus*, were by them called *Quintilis* and *Sexilis*, as being their fifth and sixth Months.

Q. *What were their Dies Attri and Postriduani?*

A. Unfortunate and unlucky Days. They were called *Attri*, because they were marked in their Calendars with black; as on the contrary their *Dies Albi*, or lucky Days, were marked with white Characters. This Custom they borrow'd from the *Scythians*.

Q. *Why had they the Name of Postriduani?*

A. Because the Romans were of Opinion, that *Dies postridie Calendas, Nonas, & Idus*, i. e. the next Day after the *Calends, Nones, or Ides* of every Month, was unfortunate.

Q. *What other Distinction of Days did they observe?*

A. They had their *Dies Festi*, or *Feriae*, Holidays; because they did on such Days *ferire Victimae*, that is, offer up Sacrifice: Then their working Days, call'd *Profesti, quasi procul a Festis*: and their half Holidays, which, *ab intercidendo*, they called *Dies Intercisi*, Days as it were cut asunder; one Part of them being allow'd to all Manner of Business, and the other wholly to religious Offices.

Q. *Are these all?*

A. No; we find another Distinction of Days in the *Roman* Calendar; for some were *Fasti*, whole Court-Days, others *ex parte Fasti*, half Court-Days; and lastly, *Nefasti*, Nonleet-Days, tho' indeed the Word *Nefastus* does often signify unlucky.

Q. *From whence are these Names derived?*

A. A *fando*, from speaking; because upon those Days which were *Fasti*, the Pretor might lawfully keep Court, and administer Justice, which was not done without speaking these three Words, *Do, Dico, Addico*.

L

Q. *What*

Q. What is the Meaning of those three Words?

A. A Judge is said *Dare*, when he grants out an Action or Writ against a Man; *Dicere*, when he passes Judgment on him; and *Addicere*, when in the Court he sees and allows the Delivery of the Thing or Person on which Judgment is pass'd.

Q. When did the Romans begin their Days?

A. Their Day began at our Six in the Morning; so that their *Hora Prima* was our Seven, *Hora Secunda* our Eight, *Hora Tertia* our Nine o'Clock, and so on.

Q. What were the Nundinae?

A. Every Month had three great Markets, which, because they were kept every ninth Day, were called *Nundinae*.

Of the Republick.

Q. HOW many Sorts of Slaves were there among the Romans?

A. Three.

Q. What were the first?

A. The first were the Children of Slaves, to whom they gave the Name of *Verna*.

Q. What were the second?

A. Slaves by a Civil Right, viz. such as were sold.

Q. And the third, what were they?

A. Slaves by the Law of Nations, those that were taken in Battle, or publickly bought at an Auction.

Q. How many Sorts of Freemen were there among the Romans?

A. Three Sorts likewise. In the first Place, those who were born free, and of Parents who had been always free, and these they called *Ingenui*.

genui. Secondly, the Children of those who had been made free, who were called *Libertini*. Thirdly, those who of Slaves were set at Liberty by their Masters, and these last were called *Liberti*.

Q. How many Ways were there of obtaining the Freedom of the City of Rome?

A. Three. First, By Birth, both, or at least one, of the Parents being free; and these were called *Cives Originarii*. Secondly, By Gift, when the Freedom was bestowed on any Stranger or Nation, and these were called *Civitate Donati*. Thirdly, by Manumission.

Q. After what Manner was that performed?

A. The Servant was brought before the Consul or Pretor by his Master, who laying his Hand upon his Head, cried, *Hunc liberum esse volo*, and with that turp'd him round, gave him a Cuff on the Ear, and was said *Emittere servum e manu*. Then the Pretor laid a certain Rod, called *Vindicta*, upon his Head, and answer'd, *Dico eum esse liberum more Quiritum*. At that Time he received a Cap as a Token of Liberty; whence *ad Pileum vocare aliquem*, is to set one free.

Q. Into how many Orders did Romulus divide the City of Rome?

A. Into two; viz. the *Patricians* or Nobles, and the *Plebeians* or People. Afterwards a third Order, namely that of the Knights or *Equites*, was added.

Q. What Privileges did the Patricians at that Time enjoy?

A. They had a Right to aspire to all the Dignities and Offices of the State; but in succeeding Times the *Plebeians* were not excluded from them, except some few, which were never executed but by *Patricians*.

Of the Army.

Q. *OF how many several Parts was the Roman Army composed?*

A. Of three Parts: The first were the *Roman Legions*, wherein none but the *Roman Citizens* served; the second consisted of the *Allies*, that is to say, the *People of Italy*; and the third was made up of *Auxiliary Troops* sent by *Foreigners*.

Q. *How were the Allies paid?*

A. They served *gratis*, and had nothing but a certain Quantity of *Corn* given them: As for the *Auxiliary Troops*, they were daily paid; but they did not take the *Military Oath*, as the *Allies* did.

Q. *What did a Legion comprehend?*

A. A certain Number of *Horse* and *Foot*.

Q. *Into how many Companies were the Cavalry and Infantry divided?*

A. Into ten: In every Company of *Foot* there were three Bands of *Soldiers*, and in every Band two *Centuries*.

Q. *Into how many Centuries were the Troops of Horse divided?*

A. Each into three *Centuries*; and so there were consequently sixty *Centuries* and thirty *Decuries* in every *Legion*.

Q. *Who commanded the Infantry?*

A. Six *Tribunes*, with sixty *Centurions*, one to each *Century*.

Q. *By whom were the Decuries commanded?*

A. By thirty *Decurions*, and by one *Officer*, to whom they gave the Name of *Prefect*, and this *Prefect* was at the Head of a whole *intire Wing*.

Q. *How*

Q. How many Men had they in each Company of Foot?

A. Sometimes four hundred and twenty, and sometimes they amounted to six hundred Men.

Q. How many Men were there in each Turma, or Troop of Horse?

A. No more than thirty, ten in each Decury, but in the Wing three or four hundred.

Q. From whence did the Roman Legions take their Name?

A. From their Rank: Thus, for Instance, those that were of the first, called themselves Soldiers of the first; and those who were of the second, called themselves Soldiers of the Second Legion.

Q. What Authority had the first more than the second Legion?

A. It was superior to all the rest, as well for Quality as Number, because it was commanded by the most experienced Officers.

Q. Had they not another very considerable Body besides this?

A. Right; and that was the Pretorian Regiment, which always follow'd the Commander in Chief, who, as he raised this Company, so he often picked out the best Men he could find in the other Troops, or at least his best Friends, to compose it. Augustus had nine of these Troops of Guards; but they became afterwards so unruly, that instead of guarding the Emperors, they frequently displaced and killed them.

Q. How many Legions had the Romans in the Time of the Consuls?

A. At first they were only four, that were equally divided between the two Consuls; afterwards the Allies were obliged to furnish them with four more.

Q. Did not the Number of them rise considerably higher in following Ages?

A. Yes; for in the second Punick War the Romans had in Italy, Sicily, and Spain, twenty-five Legions, but in the Civil War between Caesar and Pompey, they amounted to forty; and at the Siege of Mutina, the Army of Anthony, and that of the Consuls, was compos'd of fifty Legions.

Q. How were the Allies ranked?

*A. They were disposed after such Manner that they cover'd the two Sides of the Roman Legions, which made these Troops be called *Alæ*, or Wings, their Commanders not calling themselves Tribunes, but Prefects.*

Q. What Difference did they make between a Wing and a Cornu?

A. They indifferently used the latter when they spoke of the Roman Legions and their Allies; whereas they seldom made Use of the former when they spoke of Legions, but almost always when they spoke of the Troops of Horse furnished by the Allies.

Q. What was a Wing at that Time when the Republick flourished?

A. Nothing but the Horse of the Allies; but under the Emperors they gave this Name to the auxiliary Troops.

Of the Soldiers.

Q. HOW many Sorts of Soldiers had the Romans in their Infantry?

A. There were four Sorts of them.

Q. What was the first?

A. Those who were light-armed, and consequently

quently fittest for all Sorts of nimble Service. These were generally young Fellows.

Q. Who were they that composed the second?

A. The *Hastari*, or Pikemen, who were somewhat more advanced in Age.

Q. What was the third?

A. Those who for their Age and Valour were called *Principes*; they carried a Buckler, and used Hangers, and were all in the Strength and Vigour of their Age.

Q. What was the fourth?

A. They were the *Triarii*, old experienced Soldiers, that fought in the third Rank. They used Bucklers, Hangers, and the *Pilum*.

Q. How many Bands were there in every Cohort?

A. Three, as I have already told you: The first consisting of Pikemen; the second of the *Principes*; the third of the *Triarii*, who were always six hundred: But the others were sometimes more, and sometimes less.

Q. What particular Commander belonged to these light-armed Soldiers?

A. They had none, but were equally divided among the three other Bodies.

Q. Had they not several Names?

A. At first they were called *Ferentarii*, *Lorarii*, and *Accensi*, because they filled up what was wanting in the Legions; afterwards the Name of *Velites* was given them; and lastly, that of the *Antesignani*, of *Veloces*, of Archers and Slingers, all which Names are derived either from their Arms or their Ranks; and as they were not overcharged with Arms, they generally began the Fight by casting of Darts, Stones, or Arrows.

Q. Who were the Evocati?

L 4

A. They

A. They were certain old Soldiers, who after they had served their Time, were desired by the Generals of the Army to make another Campaign. These had great Privileges conferred upon them.

Of the Commanders.

Q. **H**OW many Sorts of Commanders were there?

A. Three Sorts: First, the Centurions and Tribunes commanded the Foot. Secondly, the Decurions and the Prefects the Horse. Thirdly, the Lieutenants and the General commanded both one and the other.

Q. What were the Privileges of the first Cohort?

A. That he who was Centurion of the Pikes called himself the first Pike, he of the *Principes* the first Prince, and he of the *Triarians* the *Primipilus*. It belonged to this last, to keep the Roman Eagle, to fix it in the Ground, or carry it; which we understand by the ninth and tenth *Primipilus*.

Q. How many Cohorts were in each Legion?

A. There were ten in each Legion, and in every Cohort six Centurions.

Q. From whence did these Centurions derive their Names?

A. From the Cohort where they serv'd. Those, for Instance, that were of the Tenth, or the Eighth, call'd themselves the Tenth or Eighth.

Q. But he that commanded the *Triarians* in the tenth Legion, how was he called?

A. He was called *Decimus Pilus*; he that commanded the *Principes*, *Decimus Princeps*, and so of the rest.

Q. What Reward was given to a Soldier after some glorious Exploit? *A.*

A. From the second Centurion of Pikes in the tenth Cohort they made him the first, that is to say, the tenth Pike, afterwards tenth *Princeps*, &c. and this in the same Cohort.

Q. How did they recompense him afterwards according to his Merit?

A. He was made first Officer of the ninth Cohort, then of the eighth, and so on till he came to the first, or pethaps to a Tribune's Place, if Fortune favoured him.

Q. What did the Tribunes command?

A. They commanded the Legion, the Centurions, the Cohort, and Companies of Foot.

Q. What did the Prefects command?

A. They commanded a Wing of Horse, and the Decurions the other Companies and Decuries.

Q. How many Men were there in a Wing?

A. There were thirty in these Companies, and ten in every Decury.

Q. Who chose the Legati, or Lieutenants to the Generals?

A. The Senate nominated them, or else the Generals chose them themselves, to the Number of three, or four, or more.

Q. What Power had they?

A. They had the Power to judge private Causes, and commanded the Army in the General's Absence.

Q. Did not Augustus establish two Sorts of them?

A. Yes; he made Consular ones, who were to look after the whole Army; and the Pretorians, who took Care of every Legion.

Q. To whom did they give the Name of Imperator besides the Cæsars?

A. To those who by a Commission from the State had the managing of an Army, being the same that a Pretor was in ancient Times.

Q. Who had it besides?

A. Those who after they had gained some remarkable Victory, wherein at least a thousand of the Enemies were slain, received this Title first from their Soldiers, and afterwards from the Senate; and then publick Supplications were granted them to thank the Gods, and sometimes a Triumph.

Q. What were their Colours?

A. An Eagle, a Wolf, a Minotaur, a Horse, and a Boar.

Q. What was this Eagle made of?

A. It was a Golden Eagle fixed upon a Pike, and was only the Ensign of the Roman Legions, so that they counted their Legions by Eagles. It was first of all borne by *Marius*.

Q. What did the Romans use for an Ensign in Romulus's Time?

A. They took a Handful of Hay, and perch'd it on the Top of a Pole; but this was afterward changed into a Pike, on the Top of which they placed a small Piece of Wood.

Q. After what Manner was it cut?

A. In the Form of a Cross, and from it several small Circles and little Bucklers hung down cross-wise, and above it was elevated a Hand.

Q. What was painted upon these Circles?

A. The Representations of their Gods and Emperors. Their Javelins likewise served for Ensigns. To these the Emperors added an Elephant, a Sphinx, and a Dragon.

Q. To whom did these Standards belong?

A. To the Horse. These Colours were four-square, and fasten'd to a Pike curiously adorn'd with embroider'd Flames, in Gold; and in Purple;

ple ; and sometimes the Names of the Emperors were artificially wrought in them.

After what Manner they disposed their Army for a Battle.

Q. INTO how many Batallions did the Romans divide their Army?

A. Into two or three Batallions ; into two when they made two Wings, one upon the Right, the other upon the Left.

Q. And when into three ?

A. When between the two Wings they placed a third Batallion : and this happened when they had no more than two Legions, or sometimes more.

Q. Where were the Romans placed ?

A. They stood in the Middle, and the Allies in the Wings. I have here given you a Description of an Army drawn out after their Manner, which I borrowed from *Titus Livius*.

Q. How many Legions were drawn out in this Army described by Livy ?

A. Four: Two consisting of Romans, and two of their Allies.

Q. Where were the two Romans placed ?

A. They were placed in the Midst, the elder of the two on the Right, and the other on the Left, and the two Allies in the two Wings.

Q. When their Horse were drawn out into Squadrons, where did they stand ?

A. They were placed in such a Manner on the Sides, that that of the Romans cover'd the Right Wing, and that of the Allies the Left.

Q. How many Ranks had they in every Legion ?

L 6

A. Three

A. Three : The first was of Pikemen, the second of the *Principes*, the third of the *Triarii*. In the Front were to be seen all the ten Companies of Pikes belonging to every Legion, and consequently the Van was composed of forty Companies.

Q. Where did the Evocati stand?

A. They were either with the General or in the Middle of the Ranks, to encourage the rest.

Q. And where were the Centurions?

A. They were thus distributed : Two commanded the middle Batallion, and the other two commanded, one the right Wing, and the other the left Wing.

Q. Where was the General's Place?

A. It was between the *Triarii* and the *Principes* : He was surrounded by the *Pretorian Bands*, and from thence commanded the whole Army.

Q. How were the Companies dispos'd?

A. They were so dispos'd in a Quadrangular Form, that the Legion was likewise four-square. They fought just as they were ranked.

Of the Honours that were bestowed on the Conquerors.

Q. WHEN a General had gain'd a considerable Victory, and the Soldiers saluted him by the Name of Imperator, what did he next do?

A. He immediately dispatch'd Letters crown'd with Laurel to the Senate, to demand of them that they would give him the Name of *Imperator*, as likewise that they would *decernere Supplicationes*, that is, appoint publick Supplications or Prayers.

Q. What

Q. What did the Senate when they had agreed to this Proposal?

A. They all went in a Body to the Temples, to thank the Gods, and offer'd Sacrifices to them.

Q. What did they do afterwards?

A. They gave publick Entertainments, and the publick Rejoicings continued more or less, according to the Circumstance of the Victory, and the Quality of the Conqueror.

Q. Why was a lesser Triumph called Ovation?

A. As well from the joyful Acclamations of the Soldiers, who often redoubled this Letter *O*, as because that in this lesser Triumph, Sheep were offer'd, as they offer'd Oxen in the greater.

Q. Who might pretend to this Triumph?

A. He that was neither Dictator nor Consul, and he that had not vanquished a lawful Enemy.

Q. What Honours did they pay him?

A. He was crown'd with Myrtle, and so made his Entry into the City, preceded by several Men, playing upon Flutes. Learned Men are not agreed whether he rid on Horseback or no.

Q. How was the Solemnity of a Triumph ordered?

A. First marched the Flutes and Trumpets; next the Oxen that were design'd for Sacrifice; adorn'd with Garlands and Ribbons; after them were to be seen the Spoils taken from the Enemy, the several Titles and Representations of Nations and Cities.

Q. Who follow'd after this?

A. The Conquer'd Leaders, Princes, and King, bound and fetter'd.

Q. And where did the Emperor, or Lord General appear?

A. He was mounted upon a Chariot in a Triumphal

triumphal Robe, crown'd with Laurel, and held a Branch in his Hand.

Q. How was his Chariot drawn?

A. Sometimes by Stags, sometimes by Lions or Elephants, but for the most Part it was drawn by four white Horses.

Q. Who follow'd the Chariot?

A. The Children, the Relations, and Friends of the Conqueror. The victorious Army marched afterwards, the Cavalry and Infantry each in their proper Rank.

Q. After what Manner did they march?

A. They were all crown'd with Laurel, and sung certain Verses suitable to the Occasion, and carried about them the Marks of their Valour, some Bracelets, others Spears, or Chains about their Necks, the greatest Part Crowns.

Q. Whither did the Conqueror go in this Procession?

A. He went to the Capitol, where he offer'd Sacrifice, after which the Senate made a magnificent Feast at the publick Expence.

Q. What sort of a Place was the Capitol?

A. It was a Temple dedicated to Jupiter, upon the Tarpelian Hill. Domitian laid out three Millions to gild it.

Q. What was peculiar to this Temple?

A. There were three Altars in it, one dedicated to Juno, another to Minerva, that in the Middle, which was the most magnificent, to Jupiter.

Of the Soothsayers or Augurs.

Q. WHAT was the proper Business of the Augurs?

A. Their

A. Their Office was to explain Dreams, extraordinary Events and Oracles, which they did by the Singing or Flight of Birds, or by observing how they fed.

Q. Whence is their Name deriv'd?

A. They were called *Augures*, *ab Avium Garritu*, from the Chirping and Singing of Birds; and *Auspices*, *quasi Avispices*, *ab Aves aspiciendo*, from beholding the Flight of Birds. These two Kinds of Soothsaying have occasion'd these and the like Sayings, *bonis Avibus* or *Auspiciis*, with good Luck; *malis Avibus*, with ill Luck. And because they began nothing, *inauspicato*, i. e. without the Counsel of the Augurs, hence *auspicari rem* has signified to begin a Matter.

Q. From how many Sorts of Things did they draw their Auguries?

A. From five: First from Thunder and Lightning in the Heavens.

Q. What was the second?

A. By the Singing of some Birds, as of a Raven, a Crow, an Owl, and these they call'd *Oscines*; or by the Flight of others, as Eagles, Vultures, Buzzards, which were called *Præpetes*.

Q. And how was the third?

A. By Chickens: Early in the Morning they gave them something to eat; now if they did not immediately pick it up with great Greediness, so that some of the Crumbs fell out of their Mouths, if they walked from one Side to the other, if they crow'd, or if they flew away, it was look'd upon to be an ill Augury: if the contrary happen'd, they drew a happy Prefage from it. From these Fowls the Augur was call'd *Pullarius*.

Q. What was the fourth?

A. It was taken from four-footed Beasts, as Wolves,

Wolves, Foxes, Goats, Affes, Weazels, Rats, &c. which either should cross the Way, or appear in some unusual Place.

Q. How was the fift?

A. From an extraordinary Accident either within Doors, or in the Fields. As for Instance, suppose a Man had seen a Weazel, or if Rats had eaten Honey, if one had heard a strange Voice, &c. all this they call'd *Diræ*.

Q. What did the Soothsayers do with the Victims?

A. First, they consider'd the different Manner they follow'd those that led them to the Altar; whether they did it easily, or with Difficulty; as also the lesser or greater Quantity of Blood that came from them.

Q. What other Observations did they make?

A. They observ'd the good or bad Disposition of the Heart and Liver. Lastly, from the Brightness or Gloominess of the Flame, they drew either a good or bad Augury. Those that observ'd the Fire and Smoke, were by a peculiar Name call'd *Capnomantes*, from the Greek, which is as much as to say, *Smoke Prophets*.

Of the Roman Apparel.

Q. HOW were the Romans clothed?

A. They wore over their Tunick a Woollen Robe. The Grecians had their Mantle, called *Pallium*, which was as peculiar to them as the *Toga* to the Romans.

Q. What Sort of a Robe was it?

A. The Figure of it was generally in a Demi-circle, and sometimes four-square.

Q. Were there any Plaits or Folds in this Gown?

A. There

3

A. There were two, so placed that one was above the other; the uppermost came sloping cross from the right to the left, after the Manner of a Belt, and the lower came from the Waist of the Gown to the Bottom.

Q. Who wore their Gowns edged?

A. The Magistrates and Priests, but especially their Children, who till they were seventeen Years old wore it, with another Mark of their Nobility, in the Form of a Golden Heart, which was fasten'd to the Collar.

Q. And when they were seventeen Tears old, what Robe did they wear then?

A. They took the *Toga Virilis*, which was wholly plain: Nay, young Gentlemen wore the same Habit till they were married, the Edges of which were covered with Purple.

Q. What did they wear under this Gown?

A. One or two Tunicks or Coats; that which was next the Skin was call'd the *Subucula*, and the other kept the Name of *Tunica*.

Q. What Sort of a fashion'd Coat was it that the People wore?

A. It was without Studs. The Knights wore one with small Studs, and the Senators theirs with large ones.

Q. How were these Studs made?

A. They were nothing but Knots of Purple, in the Form of broad Nails-heads, sew'd or embroider'd on the Stuff.

Q. Who wore the Robe which they call'd the *Palmata*?

A. Those that triumph'd: This Robe derived its Name from Palms, which were painted upon it. All the different Habits which we have no *English* Names to express them by, were different

rent Military Vestments which they wore over their Tunick.

Q. Those sumptuous Cloaks call'd the Paludamentum and Chlamys, how were they made?

A. They were made of Scarlet, Purple and Gold, and serv'd to defend them from the Cold.

Q. How many Sorts of Shoes had they?

A. Two: one, which only cover'd the Sole of the Foot, the other, which cover'd it wholly.

Of the Roman Games.

Q. HOW many Sorts of Games were there among the Romans?

A. Several Sorts.

Q. Where were they kept?

A. Some in the Circus, or on the Theatre, and took their Names from thence; others were sacred, and celebrated in Honour of the Gods.

Q. How were these Sacred Sports called?

A. They were generally named from the Deity in whose Honour they were kept: Others were made upon the Account of some Vow. Funeral Sports were only kept at the Death of some Person, and others for mere Exercise.

Q. How many Sorts of Sports were represented in the Circus?

A. Seven Sorts: First, they either fought at Whirl-bats, or at Fisticuffs, or Cudgels, or Swords, or Javelins, or Pikes, &c. or else they were Gladiators, or Men fighting with Beasts; or lastly, they wrestled with one another, to see who could give the first Fall.

The second was Running.

The third was Leaping, and that either on a level

level Place, or else from a low Place to a high one, or from a high one to a low one.

The fourth was shooting.

The fifth was fighting on Horseback.

The sixth was driving Chariots, drawn by three or four Horses.

The seventh was a *Naumachia*, or Sea-fight, representing in fresh Water the Manner of a Naval Engagement.

Q. *After what Manner were the Amphitheatres built?*

A. They were built in a circular or oval Form; the middle Part was call'd the *Cavea*, or *Arena*.

Q. *Why was it called so?*

A. Because it was cover'd with Sand.

The Games called the *Megalenses* were celebrated in Honour of *Cybele*, the Mother of the Gods.

Those kept in Honour of *Ceres*, as also those kept in Honour of *Mars*, *Flora*, and *Apollo*, took their Names from these Divinities.

The *Capitoline* Games were celebrated in Memory of the Preservation of the Capitol.

The *Roman* Games, which were likewise for Distinction call'd the *Great Games*, were kept in Honour of the three Deities, *Jupiter*, *Minerva*, and *Juno*.

The *Plebeian* Games were instituted after the Return of the People to *Rome*.

The *Compitalitii* were kept in the Cross-ways and open Streets.

The *Secular* Games were so named, not because they were celebrated but once in an Age, but because they were very seldom exhibited. Young Gentlemen were only concern'd in these
last;

last; and he that presided in them was call'd the *Princeps Juventutis*, or Prince of the Youth.

Of the Funeral Rites.

Q. WHAT Customs did the Romans observe when they perceiv'd a Body dying?

A. The next of the Kin received his last Gasp of Breath into his Mouth, to show how unwilling he was to part with him; and as soon as he was dead, clos'd his Eyes.

Q. What was the first thing they did when a Person was dead?

A. He was washed, anointed, and embalmed. If he was a Man of Quality, they put him on a Garment peculiar to his Degree, then placed his Corps in a Bed near the Gate, and on the eighth Day carried him to the *Pyra*, or Funeral Pile, During these seven Days his Friends met together, and made great Outcries about his Body, hoping to awake him if he were not perfectly dead. This was call'd *Conclamatio*, whence we proverbially cry *Conclamatum est*, when we give a Thing for lost.

Q. Who carried his Body?

A. The greatest Men of Note in the Republick carried him in a Bed all cover'd with Purple.

Q. But what if he was a Man of an indifferent Fortune?

A. He was then carried on a Bier, by one of his nearest Relations, to the *Puticuli*, Places of publick Interment; suppos'd to be the same with the *Catacombs*; or else by those whose Business and Employment it was, who were a *Vespertino Tempore*, call'd *Vespæ*, or *Vespilones*, because they buried them in the Dusk of the Evening.

Q. What

Q. What appear'd at the Head of this Funeral Pomp?

A. The Marks of his Nobility, the Trophies of Arms, the Spoils and Standards he had taken in War; lastly, the Bustoes and Statues of his Ancestors, either done in Wax, or painted, were carried before him.

Q. What follow'd after this?

A. His Relations, Friends and Children, with their Hair dishevel'd, and in Mourning; from following the Body, a *sequendo*, these Funeral Rites have been called *Exequie*.

Q. Did not the Women likewise follow?

A. Yes; but bare-headed, and apparell'd in White; besides a great Number of *Præfice*, or Female Weepers, who with their studied Lamentations gave an Example to the rest.

Q. If the deceased was a Person that had done great Services to the Commonwealth, whither did they carry his Body?

A. It was carried to the *Forum*, or publick Place, where a Funeral Oration was delivered in Praise of him.

Q. When that Harangue was over, whither did they go?

A. They carried him to the Place where his Body was to be burnt: Here they erected a large Pile or Tabernacle, composed of the Wood of resinous Trees, garnish'd all about with Branches of Cypress.

Q. What did they do afterwards?

A. After they had cast his Arms and Apparel upon this Pile of Wood, the Body was to be burnt. His Friends were formerly used to cut off one of his Fingers, which they buried with a second Solemnity.

Q. After

Q. After all these Ceremonies, what did they do with his Body?

A. They placed it at last upon the Pyra, and the nearest Relation to the deceased Party, either in Blood or Friendship, turning his Face averse, set it on Fire with a Torch.

Q. What did they do about this Pile?

A. Sometimes they shed human Blood, either of Captives or Gladiators; and sometimes these weeping Women flasted their Cheeks.

Q. When the Body was burnt, where did they put the Ashes?

*A. They washed them in Milk and Wine, then put them into an Urn, after which the Priest thrice sprinkled the Company with clean Water, and the eldest of these *Præfices* cry'd aloud, *Licet*, which is as much as to say, Now you may go.*

Q. What Answer did the Standers by make?

A. They sigh'd, and said, Farewel, farewel, we shall follow you in our Turns, when it shall please Nature.

Q. Whither were his Bones and Ashes carried?

A. They were carried to a Sepulchre, before which an Altar was built, and upon it they burnt Incense.

Q. After all these last Offices were perform'd, what did his Heirs do?

*A. They gave a Feast to his Relations, and sometimes to the People; but always prepared a Funeral Supper for the old and aged Men, which was called *Silicernium*, and figuratively signifies an old Fellow.*

Q. Did the Romans use to bury within the City?

A. By a Law of the twelve Tables it was provided that none besides the Emperor and Vestal Nuns

Nuns should be buried within the City ; tho' some few, for particular Reasons, have obtain'd it. They generally buried them near the Highway, to put Passengers in mind of their Mortality ; hence we meet the Word *Viator* so frequently in old Incriptions.

Q. What was the ancient Way of Burying among the Romans ?

A. Interment ; but afterwards, to prevent the ill Treatment of their Enemies, they burnt their Bodies, as the *Grecians* did. However, 'tis certain the poorer sort were still inter'd, as being the cheapest Way, and that only Persons of Condition used Burning.

Of their Eating.

Q. HOW many stated Times do you find the Romans had for Eating ?

A. They breakfasted in the Morning ; towards Noon they dined, but always very soberly, because they dined alone ; a little after followed their Bever, and towards Nine o' Clock at Night they went to Supper, which was generally very magnificent, because they invited their Friends to it.

Q. What did they do in the Beginning of their Entertainments ?

A. They gave each of the Guests a Billet, wherein was set down the Number, the Quantity, and Order of the Courses.

Q. Upon what did they sit at Supper-time ?

A. They lay on Beds : They placed no more than three Beds about the Table, and three in a Bed, because they had seldom more Guests than nine, and they were cover'd with Purple.

Q. What

*Q. What did they use to do before they lay up-
on these Beds?*

*A. They washed their Body, changed their
Garments, and pull'd off their Shoes for Fear of
spoiling the Beds.*

*Q. Into how many Parts did they usually di-
vide their Supper?*

*A. Into three, which they called their first,
second, and third Course: In the first were al-
ways serv'd Eggs, and in the last Course (whe-
ther the second or third) always Apples; whence
we say proverbially, *Ab ovo usque ad mala.**

Q. What was the Sportula?

*A. A Dole of Meat distributed by Persons of
eminent Quality to the People, which from the
Pannier or Basket in which it was brought was
call'd Sportula. Sometimes they distributed Mo-
ney instead of Meat; so that Sportula denoted
any kind of Dole, either of Meat or Money, and
as often as it was given in lieu of a Supper, it was
opposed to *Cæna Recta.**

Q. What was a Cæna Recta, or Cæna Dubia?

*A. Both signify an handsome Entertainment,
where there is Plenty and Variety of Dishes.
Recta here signifies as much as Vera, and is op-
pos'd to Sportula, a light and short Supper. 'Tis
call'd Dubia, because in so great a Variety the
Guest does not know where to begin. Cæna Am-
bulatoria is a Supper where one Dish walks thro'
the Table.*

Of their Priests.

*Q. WHAT was the Chief Priest's or Pon-
tifex Maximus's Office?*

A. He looked after all the other Priests, and

to him it belonged to judge of all Matters that had a Relation to the Worship of the Gods.

Q. Who was the first Emperor that assum'd the Title of Pontifex Maximus?

A. Augustus Cesar; and the succeeding Emperors followed his Example, as we find in their Coins and Medals. Nay, the Christian Emperors retain'd the Name, till *Gratian* issued out a Prohibition for any one to give him that Title.

Q. Why were the Flamines so named?

A. From the Hat or Mitre they wore, which in ancient Times was called Flama.

Q. By whom was the Temple of Vesta instituted?

A. Either by Æneas, or Ascanius; at least the Vestal Virgins were by Numa Pompilius.

Q. What Rules did they observe?

A. They were obliged to take none into the Number of Vestals who were born either of a Slave or a Freed-man, or were ill-shaped, or were above Ten, or less than Six Years old. It was an honourable Order, and they were extremely respected by all People.

Q. What was their Office?

A. To keep the sacred Fire; which if by some Misfortune or Neglect it were extinguish'd, they were to kindle it with nothing but the Fire of Heaven: For which Purpose they used to contract the Sun-beams in a Burning-Glass.

Q. How many Years did they continue in the Service of this Goddess?

A. Thirty Years; during the first Ten they learnt all the Ceremonies, which they put in Practice the ten Years next following; and the last ten they employed in instructing the Novices.

M

Q. After

Q. After this Time was expired, what Privilege had they?

A. They were at Liberty to quit their sacerdotal Habit, and marry.

Q. When the Sacred Fire was suffer'd to go out thro' Negligence, what Punishment did the Criminal endure?

A. She was publickly whipt, and if any of them lost their Virginity, they were buried alive.

Q. Where?

A. Without the Town, in a very dark Vault, where they had a Bed and a Lamp lighted.

Q. Did they leave them any Food in the Vault?

A. Lest the Criminal should immediately die of Hunger, they left a little Bread, Milk, and Oil.

Q. When the Vestal was shut in, and the Door made up, what did they use to do?

A. That Day a profound Silence was kept in Rome.

Of the Roman State.

Q. INTO how many Parts were the Roman People divided?

A. Into three: First, the Senators, which was the most powerful Body, so that nothing was done without their Advice.

Q. Which was the second?

A. That of the Knights, which, next to the Senators, made the greatest Figure in the Government. In this Number the Sons of the Senators were reckoned, till such time as they were of Age to be Senators.

Q. Which was the third Part?

A. 'Twas the People, by which we are to understand

derstand all those that were neither Knights nor Senators.

Q. What were the Roman Comitia?

A. Assemblies where they used to give their Votes; and because they gave them when they were divided sometimes into *Curie*, or Wards, and sometimes into Tribes or Centuries, thence arose the different Names of these Assemblies.

Q. Had not all these Assemblies their respective Privileges?

A. Yes; and they were conven'd for some special Occasion, as to create Magistrates, to enact some Law, or give their Opinion. The different Places where these Laws were made, gave them different Names.

Q. Who were there in the Assembly of Magistrates?

A. Besides Citizens, there were those that stood for Offices, and were call'd Candidates, because they wore a white Garment.

Q. Who were there beside these in this Assembly?

A. Distributors, in *Latin Diribitores*, who gave the People wooden Tables as they passed over certain Bridges, and collected their Votes.

Q. Were no other Persons admitted there?

A. There were Guards that took Care lest there should be any Cheat in gathering their Votes, and Criers who proclaim'd aloud who had most Votes.

Q. How did they manage Judicial Causes?

A. There was the Plaintiff, the Counsel; and the Defendant, who had his Friends about him, and appear'd in a very ordinary Garb, with a long Beard, his Hair, and every thing about him negligent, and out of Order.

Q. How did they give their Suffrages?

A. At

M :

A. At

A. At first they used to give them *viva voce*, but afterwards in all Assemblies for Laws or Judgments they gave the People wooden Tables; in one were these two Letters, *U. R.* that is to say, *Uti rogas*, Be it as you desire it.

Q. What was writ in the other?

A. The Letter *A.* signifying *Antiquo*; i. e. I forbid it.

Q. If the Number happen'd to be equal, how did they then?

A. The Sentence was void, unless in the Case of Criminals; for the Century which did not condemn, was suppos'd to absolve.

Q. How many Assemblies did they keep to elect Magistrates?

A. Two: The first to elect; Whom would you have, said he who presided, for your Consuls, or Pretors? And after the Election was made, Are you contented that M. Cicero and M. Anthony, whom the People have pitched upon to be Consuls, should stand.

Q. What doth the Word Forum signify?

A. 'Twas either the Place where they bought and sold, or signified the same with *Curia*, the Place where the Assemblies were held.

Q. What is the Meaning of the Word Rostra?

A. It signifies the Tribunal, from whence they harangu'd the People.

Q. Why was it so called?

A. Because it was formerly adorn'd with the Beaks of the Ships which the Romans took from the People of Antium.

Of their Gladiators.

Q. AT whose Expence were these Prizes perform'd?

A. Some-

A. Sometimes at the Expence of private Persons, who, to make themselves popular, exhibited those Shows; and because they were freely bestow'd upon the People, to whom by a publick Bill they gave Notice what Day they should be fought, therefore they are frequently denoted by the *Latin Word Munus*.

Q. What was the Original of these Spectacles?

A. It was derived from a common Practice among the Heathens at the Burial of their Friends, who were of Opinion, that the shedding of Man's Blood would be propitiatory to the Soul deceased, and for this Purpose bought Captives and Slaves to be sacrificed upon these Occasions. These particular Kinds of Fencers were called *Bustuarii*; but afterwards these Spectacles were play'd not only at Tombs, but in the *Circus*, and *Amphitheatre*: Nay, the Humour prevailed so far at last, that they were given as Legacies by Will and Testament to the People.

Q. When they met on the Day appointed, what Weapons did they fight with?

A. They were of two Sorts; *Lusoria Tela*, with which they only shew'd Feats of Activity; and *Decretoria*, with which they really encountered one another for Life or Death. Their skirmishing with the former was properly termed *Præludium*.

Q. When a Gladiator received a dangerous Wound, what became of him?

A. He was not immediately discharged, for this depended upon the Pleasure of the Emperor, or the People, or the Person that gave the Show. If they thought fit to make him continue the Fight, tho' in ever so great Extremity, they signified it *convertendo Pollicem*, by turning

up the Thumb, as they did the contrary, *Pro-mendo Pollicem*, by turning down the Thumb; This Discharge was called *Missio*.

Q. What Reward did the Conquerors receive?

A. Sometimes Money, sometimes a Garland or Palm-tree, whence figuratively *Palma* has been used to signify the Victory itself: Sometimes the People gave them a Wand, call'd *Rudis*, and sometimes a Cap or *Pileus*; both which last were Badges or Tokens of Liberty, and of their being wholly discharged from this slavish Sort of Life.

Of the Sybilline Oracles among the Romans.

Q. HOW many Sibyls were there?

A. They are generally reckon'd to be ten. The first was called *Persica*, the second *Lybica*, the third *Delphica*, the fourth *Cumæa*, the fifth *Eritbræa*, the sixth *Samia*, the seventh *Cumana*, the eighth *Hellepontica*, the ninth *Phrygia*, and the tenth *Tiburtina*. They were all of them Women very famous for the Spirit of Prophecy.

Q. Where were there Books kept?

A. Within the Capitol, under Ground, in a Chest of Stone, where they continued safe till the burning of the Capitol in *Sylla's* Time. But to retrieve this Loss, the Senate dispatched Envoys into *Greece* and *Asia* to collect all the Prophecies which went under their Name. They were supposed to be of that Certainty, that when they affirmed any thing to be undoubtedly true, they used to say it was *Sibyllæ folium*, as true as the *Sibyl's* Oracle.

Q. Did not Tarquinius Priscus institute a certain

tain Number of Priests to expound and keep their Oracles?

A. Yes, who were at first from their Number called *Duumviri*, afterwards they were increased to ten, and called *Decemviri*; and lastly, *Sylla*, as 'tis supposed, added five more, and then they were called the *Quindecemviri*. These Oracles were constantly consulted in all Times of publick Calamity and Exigence: And to the abovementioned Priests it belonged to see that Sacrifices, Supplications, Processions, Expiations, and in short, all Ceremonial Rites prescribed by these Books, were duly perform'd.

Q. Which of the Sibyls was it that writ her Oracles upon Leaves of Trees?

A. The *Sibylla Cumæa*; and as these Leaves were frequently scatter'd by the Winds, it was a difficult Matter to place them in due Order again. Hence arose the Proverb, *Laboriosius est quam Sibyllæ folia colligere*.

Q. Is *Sibylla* a proper Name?

A. No; 'tis an Appellation common to all Women that have the Gift of Prophecy, from *οἶδς*, which in the *Æolick Dialect* is the same with *Deus*, God, and *βουλῆ*, i. e. Counsel; because they revealed the Will and Pleasure of the Gods to the People.

Of their Sacrifices.

Q. **WHAT** was the Manner of Sacrificing?

A. First, the Priest laid his Hand on the Altar, and rehearsed certain Prayers to *Janus* and *Vesta*.

Q. Why so?

A. Because the Romans were persuaded that

without their Intercession they could not have Access to the other Gods. His Prayers being ended, he laid upon the Beast's Head a little Corn, together with a Cake made of Meal and Salt, called in *Latin Mola*. From this Ceremony the Act of sacrificing has been termed *Immolatio*.

Q. What did he do after this?

A. He drank some Wine out of a wooden or earthen Chalice, which was afterwards carried about to all the People, that they might also *libare*, or gently taste of it. This Rite was called *Libatio*.

Q. Proceed.

A. When this was over, the rest of the Wine, with Frankincense mix'd in it, was pour'd upon the Beast's Head between the Horns, one crying out with a loud Voice, *Macta est Hostia*, i. e. *magis aucta*; and then they immediately began to kill the Sacrifice.

Q. After what Manner was this done?

A. First the Priest plucked off some of the Hairs between the Horns, and threw them into the Fire; then turning his Face towards the East, he drew a long crooked Knife upon the Beast's Back, and commanded his Under Officers or *Pope*, to kill the Beasts.

Q. Were the Standers by idle all this Time?

A. No; for some saved the Blood in Vessels, others slay'd the Beast, and others washed it. Then the Priest observ'd the Intrails, and if he discover'd no ill Omens in them, the abovemention'd *Pope* roll'd them in Barly-Meal, and sent them in Baskets to the Priests, who taking them up in a broad Platter, laid them upon the Altar, and burnt them. This was properly call'd *litare*.

Q. And how did they conclude?

A.

A. After the Portion laid out for the Gods was burnt, the People repair'd to a common Feast, where as they were eating, they sung Hymns, and danced about the Altar.

Of their Marriages and Divorces.

Q. HOW was the Manner of Contracting?

A. For the greater Security, they wrote down the Form of the Contract upon Tables of Record, and had them seal'd by some Witnesses there present, who from this Action were called *Signatores*. But first they consulted the Augur, as they were used to do in all Actions of any Importance.

Q. Why did the Woman wear the Ring, which the Man in Token of his Affection gave her, on the fourth Finger of the left Hand?

A. Because they supposed that an Artery from the Heart proceeded to that Finger alone.

Q. Whence is the Word *Nuptiæ* derived?

A. From *Nubo*, which signifies to cover; for the Custom was, that the Woman should be brought to her Husband with a *Flammeum*, or yellow Veil thrown over her Face.

Q. Why was the Bride by a seeming Violence taken from her Mother, or next Relation?

A. Because of the good Success which *Romulus* and his Followers had in the violent taking away of the *Sabine* Women.

Q. What other Ceremonies did they use?

A. Towards Night the Woman was led to her Husband's House (whence the common Phrase *Uxorem ducere*, to marry a Wife) with five Torches, to intimate the Need which married Persons had of five Deities, viz. *Jupiter, Juno, Ve-*

nus, uadela, and Diana, who is oftentimes called Lucina.

Q. What were these Torches made of?

A. Of a pitchy Liquor that issued from a Tree call'd Teda. Hence the Poets figuratively called both the Torches and the Wedding itself Tedas.

Q. When the Woman was brought to the Door, what did she then?

A. She anointed the Posts of the Door with Oil, from which Ceremony a Wife was call'd Uxor, quasi Unxor; then the Brideman lifted her over the Threshold, and so carried her by a seeming Force.

Q. Why so?

A. Because she could not in Modesty seem to go without Violence into that Place where she was to resign her Virginity.

Q. As she was carried in, what was it the Company cry'd aloud?

A. They cry'd, Talassio, Talassio, as the Greeks did Hymen, Hymenæe; for which this Reason is alledged, That at the Rape of the Sabine Women, some of the meaner Sort carrying away one of the fairest Women, certain Citizens would have taken her from them, which to prevent, they pretended that they carried her to one Talassius, a Man of great Esteem, and brought their Prey off, the others who accompanied, crying Talassio, Talassio.

Q. What follow'd after this?

A. Being thus brought home, she received the Keys of her Husband's House, to denote that the Custody of every Thing in it was committed to her Care.

Q. How was the Marriage-Bed stiled?

A.

A. Genialis Lectus, and sometimes *Lectus Adversus*, quod eum in atrio collocari januæ ex adverso mos fuit; that is, because they placed it in the Court directly opposite to the Gate.

Q. What Ceremonies did they use the next Day after the Marriage?

A. They gave a solemn Entertainment, where the Relations and Friends of the married Couple met to make merry. This Feast they call'd *Reposita*.

Q. How many Sorts of Divorces had they?

A. Two: One between Parties only contracted; the second between married People. The first was properly called *Repudium*, in which the Party suing for a Divorce, used this Form, *Conditione tua non utar*; the other was called *Divortium*, and the Party that desired it used these Words, *Res tuas tibi habeto*, or *Res tuas tibi agito*.

Q. What is the Reason of this Phrase, mittere, or remittere Nuncium?

A. Because in these Divorces they usually sent their Wives a Paper containing the Causes of their Separation, *per Nuncium*, by a Messenger.

Q. What Formalities were used in a Divorce?

A. The Ceremonies were quite contrary to those observ'd in Marriage; for after the Censors were made acquainted with the just Causes of the Divorce, the Marriage-Tables were broken, the Dowry restor'd, the Keys of the House taken from the Woman, and she turned out of Doors.

Of the Roman Customs and Antiquities.

Q. WHAT Ceremonies did the Romans use in the building and razing of Cities?

M 6

A.

A. In the building of Cities, the Founders generally made their Augural Observations, which being ended, they marked out the Place where the Wall was to be built by ploughing up the Ground ; where they design'd the City-Gate to be, they gently carried the Plough over it, whence a Gate was called *Porta, a portando*. The like Ceremony of Ploughing was used in the demolishing of Cities.

Q. What is the Difference between Ara and Altare ?

A. The *Ara* was made four-square and cover'd with Turf, not very high from the Ground, or as some say, close to it, and upon this they sacrificed to the Terrestrial Gods. The *Altare* was lifted somewhat higher from the Ground, and upon this they sacrificed to the Celestial Gods only.

Q. What was the Scrobiculus ?

A. A Furrow or Pit, containing an Altar in it, into which they pour'd down the Blood of the Beast slain, together with Milk, Honey, and Wine, when they sacrificed to an Infernal Deity.

Q. What was the Focus ?

A. In strict Propriety of Speech it is taken for an Altar, on which they sacrificed to their Domestic Gods, such as were their *Pænales* or *Lares* ; whence arose the Proverb, *Pro Aris & Focis certare*, to fight for the Defense of one's Religion and Country, which was Part of the *Militare Sacramentum*, or Oath administered to the Roman Soldiers.

Q. Who were the Dii Majorum Gentium ?

A. Gods of the first Rank and Quality, whom *Ennius* has thus compriz'd in a Distich :

Juno,

Juno, Vesta, Minerva, Ceres, Diana, Venus, Mars, Mercurius, Jovis, Neptunus, Vulcanus, Apollo.

They were likewise call'd *Dii Consentes*, quasi *Consentientes*, because *Jupiter* would do nothing without the Consent of all.

Q. *How was the second Sort of Gods named?*

A. They were called *Semidei* or Demigods; also *Indigetes*, i. e. Gods adopted or canonized, Men deified, and *Divi*. This last Title they bestowed upon their Emperors, because for their Merits they thought them worthy to be Gods.

Q. *What were the Dii Patrii or Tutelares?*

A. Such as had undertaken the Protection of any City or Place, and therefore the *Romans*, when they besieged any Town, used, by certain Charms, to call out their Tutelar Gods, because they thought it impossible to take the City as long as they continued in it, or at least suppos'd it a Crime to make the Gods Prisoners.

Q. *What were the Genii?*

A. They were looked upon to be of a middle Effence, between God and Men; and every Man, so soon as he was born, was suppos'd to be invisibly accompanied with a good and evil Genius or Angel.

Q. *What were Men used to write upon before the Invention of Paper?*

A. They sometimes wrote upon the inward Rinds of Trees, called in Latin *Libri*, (whence we still call our Books *Libri*) sometimes on great Leaves of the *Egyptian Rush Papyrus*, from whence comes our *English* Word Paper, and the *Latin Papyrus*. Shortly after a Contest happening between *Ptolomy* King of *Egypt*, and *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus*, the latter found

out

out the Use of Parchment, and from the Place call'd it *Pergamena*. At this Time the Romans used to write in Tables of Wood, covered over with Wax; so that *Tabellæ* is employ'd to signify Missive Letters, and *Tabellarius* a Letter-Carrier; These Tables or Books were made of the *Caudex*, the Trunk or Stock of a Tree; whence we still call our Books *Codices*, a *Caudicibus*.

Q. *What did they write with?*

A. With a *Stylus*, an Instrument of Steel or Iron, having a sharp Point at one End, and being broad, but keen and well-edg'd, at the other; with a sharp Point they wrote what they pleas'd, with the broad End they scrap'd out what they had written: whence the Phrase, *Stylum invertere*, which signifies to say and unsay a Thing.

Q. *What was the Name of the Mark which they made at the End of their Books?*

A. They called it a *Coronis*, which the Interpreters of *Aristophanes* describe to be *Linea brevis ab inferiore parte flexa*. All are agreed, it was some known and common Dash, usually subjoin'd to the End of Books. This gives Light to the Greek Proverb, *ἄρ' τῆς ἀρχῆς μᾶλ' αὖ τῆς τοῦ ἐνός*, i. e. from the Beginning to the End.

Q. *After what Manner were their Books written in former Ages?*

A. They wrote a whole Book in one continued Page, which was not cut into many Leaves, and bound up as the Fashion now is, but that one entire Page was used to be roll'd upon a Staff fastened at the End of it; hence a *volvendo*, we call our Books *Volumina*, Volumes.

Q. *What was the Umbilicus?*

A.

A. The Saff on which the Book was roll'd, they call'd metaphorically *Umbilicus*, because as the Navel is the middle of a Man's Body, so when the Book was roll'd up, this Saff was the Middle of it. However, because it was always fasten'd at one End of the Page, hence *Umbilicus*, but especially when applied to a Book, signifies the End as in *Horace*, *ad Umbilicum ducere*.

Q. How were the two Knobs or Ends of the Staff, which appear'd on each Side of the Volume, call'd?

A. *Cornua*; and they used to adorn them with Silver and Gold. The Title, which was the Beginning of every Book, was named *Frons*.

Q. What Customs and Ceremonies were used by the Romans in handling their Suits of Law?

A. First, there was *In jus Vocatio*, that is, the Citing of one into the Court. Secondly, *Postulatio*, a Request put up to the Pretor, that it might be lawful for the Plaintiff to enter his Action against the Defendant; whence *Postulare aliquem de hoc vel illo Crimine*, is to accuse one of this or that Crime. Thirdly, *Nominis Delatio*, the taking of the Defendant's Name into the Court-Book, and this was call'd *Intendere Actionem vel Litem*, and *Diem alicui dicere*; that is, to enter an Action against one.

Q. When Request was made by the Plaintiff to the Pretor, that he might enter his Action against the Defendant, did he not *vadari reum*, i. e. demand Sureties or Bail of him to appear on the Day appointed?

A. Yes; and *promisit vadimonium*: that is, he entred likewise into Bond for his own Appearance on the same Day, which was commonly the
third

third Day following, called properly *dies perendinus*, and sometimes *dies tertius* simply.

Q. *Who were the Viri Consulares?*

A. Not every one that was capable of a Consul's Office, but those who had actually borne it.

Q. *How did the Romans date their Deeds and Charters?*

A. At first they did it by naming the Year wherein their City was founded; as for Instance, *ab Urbe condita*, the twentieth, thirtieth, or fortieth Year; but afterwards by subscribing the Name of their present Consuls. Nay, to know the Age of their Wines, they mark'd their Vessels after the same Manner.

Q. *What was their Manner of selling sub Corona?*

A. An Enemy was said to be sold *sub Corona*, when in the Market-Place a Crown was put upon his Head in Token of such a Sale; or else because at that Time he was surrounded with a Circle of Soldiers called *Corona*.

Q. *What was their Way of dismissing an Enemy sub Jugum?*

A. They erected two Spears, with a third lying a-cross, in Manner of a Gallows; then they caused them, being disarm'd, and their Belts taken away, to pass under, in Token of Bondage.

Q. *Why did Lapis in old Time signify a Mile?*

A. Because at every Mile's End a great Stone, in Manner of a Mark-Stone, was erected.

Q. *Why did the Romans call the Space of five Years a Lustrum?*

A. Because they did once in five Years Revolution, *lustrare Exercitum Romanum*, purge the Roman Army by Sacrifice. Hence we say, *duo lustra*, ten Years, *tria lustra*, fifteen Years, &c.

Q.

Q. Does not *Nomen* sometimes signify the same as *Debitum*, a Debt?

A. Yes; and the Reason is, because the Creditors used to write down their Debtors Names: Hence they were said, *Nomina sua liberare*, when they paid the Debt; as on the contrary they were said, *Nomina facere*, when they contracted a Debt.





*An Explication of some Letters and
Names that occur in this History.*

<i>A. Aulus.</i>	<i>Mam. Mamercus.</i>
<i>C. Caius.</i>	<i>Ser. Servius.</i>
<i>D. Decimus.</i>	<i>Sex. Sextus.</i>
<i>L. Lucius.</i>	<i>F. Filius.</i>
<i>M. Marcus.</i>	<i>N. Nepos.</i>
<i>N. Numerius.</i>	<i>Q. Quatuor.</i>
<i>P. Publius.</i>	<i>S. P. Q. R. Senatus Po-</i>
<i>Q. Quintus.</i>	<i>pulusque Romanus.</i>
<i>T. Titus.</i>	<i>S. C. Senatus Consulto.</i>
<i>Ap. Appius.</i>	<i>Cof. Consul.</i>
<i>Cn. Cneius.</i>	<i>Coff. Consules.</i>
<i>S. Spurius.</i>	<i>HS. Sesterium.</i>
<i>Ti. Tiberius.</i>	



The





The Geographical Names explained.

<i>Allobroges,</i>	The People of <i>Savoy</i> and <i>Piedmont</i> .
<i>Ambrons,</i>	People of <i>France</i> living by <i>Pillage</i> .
<i>Albanians</i>	People dwelling between the <i>Caspian Sea</i> and the <i>Georgians</i> .
<i>Daci,</i>	The People of <i>Transylvania</i> .
<i>Iberians,</i>	The <i>Georgians</i> .
<i>Insubres,</i>	The <i>Milanese</i> .
<i>Liburnia,</i>	<i>Hodie Croatia</i> .
<i>Ligurians,</i>	The <i>Genoese</i> .
<i>Marcomanni,</i>	People near <i>Austria</i> , whose Country is <i>Marck</i> ; according to others, the <i>Bohemians</i> .
<i>Quadi,</i>	The <i>Moravians</i> .
<i>Sarmatia,</i>	A large Country, Part in <i>Europe</i> , Part in <i>Asia</i> , comprehending all <i>Polonia</i> , <i>Russia</i> , <i>Muscovy</i> , and most of <i>Tartary</i> .
<i>Suevi,</i>	Inhabitants of <i>Schawben</i> .
<i>Teutones,</i>	The <i>Germans</i> .
<i>Vacce,</i>	People of the Kingdom of <i>Leon</i> in <i>Spain</i> .



A Table of the Principal Matters contained in this Book.

T HE Original of the Romans.	Page 13
A Chronological Table of the Latin Kings.	14
The Building of Rome.	15
The Means that Romulus used to people the City of Rome.	ib.
The several sorts of Government in the City of Rome.	16
The seven Kings of Rome.	18
Romulus, the first King of Rome.	19
Numa Pompilius, the 2d King of Rome.	23
Tullus Hostilius, the 3d King of Rome.	25
Ancus Martius, the 4th King of Rome.	28
Tarquinius Priscus, the 5th King of Rome.	29
Servius Tullius, the 6th King of Rome.	31
Tarquinius Superbus, the 7th King of Rome.	35
Of the Alterations made in Rome.	38
The Wars in which the Romans were engag'd.	39
The War of Hetruria.	40
The War of the Latins.	42

The

<i>The War of the Volscians.</i>	Page 43
<i>The War of the Veientes.</i>	44
<i>The War of the Gauls.</i>	48
<i>The War of the Latins.</i>	51
<i>The War against the Samnites.</i>	52
<i>The War against the Tarentines.</i>	53
<i>The first Punick War.</i>	57
<i>The second Punick War.</i>	61
<i>The War of Macedonia.</i>	71
<i>The War of Antiochus.</i>	72
<i>The second Macedonian War.</i>	73
<i>The third Punick War.</i>	75
<i>The War of Corinth.</i>	76
<i>The War of Portugal.</i>	77
<i>The Destruction of Numantia.</i>	ib.
<i>The War of the Slaves.</i>	79
<i>The War against Jugurtha.</i>	80
<i>The War against Mithridates.</i>	82
<i>The Civil War between Marius and Sylla.</i>	84
<i>The taking of Jerusalem.</i>	86
<i>The War between Cæsar and Pompey.</i>	87
<i>Of the several Seditions.</i>	91
<i>A Chronological Table of the Roman Emperors.</i>	98
<i>Julius Cæsar, the 1st Roman Emperor.</i>	101
<i>Augustus, the 2d Emperor.</i>	111
<i>Tiberius, the 3d Emperor.</i>	121
<i>Caligula, the 4th Emperor.</i>	125
<i>Claudius, the 5th Emperor.</i>	129
<i>Nero, the 6th Emperor.</i>	133
<i>Galba, the 7th Emperor.</i>	138
<i>Otho, the 8th Emperor.</i>	139
<i>Vitellius, the 9th Emperor.</i>	140
<i>Vespasian, the 10th Emperor.</i>	143
<i>Titus, the 11th Emperor.</i>	147
	Domi-

Domitian, the 12th Emperor.	Page 149
Nerva, the 13th Emperor.	152
Trajan, the 14th Emperor.	154
Adrian, the 15th Emperor.	159
Antonius Pius, the 16th Emperor.	162
M. Aurelius, and L. Verus, making together the 17th Emperor.	164
Commodus, the 18th Emperor.	167
Pertinax, the 19th Emperor.	169
Julian, the 20th Emperor.	170
Severus, the 21st Emperor.	170
Caracalla and Geta, making together the 22d Emperor.	174
Macrinus and his Son, making together the 23d Emperor.	176
Heliogabalus, the 24th Emperor.	177
Alexander, the 25th Emperor.	179
Maximin and his Son, making together the 26th Emperor.	181
Balbinus and Papinus, making together the 27th Emperor.	183
Gordianus the Younger, the 28th Emperor.	ib.
Philip and his Son, making together the 29th Emperor.	185
Decius, the 30th Emperor.	186
Gallus and Volusianus his Son, making together the 31st Emperor.	187
Æmilianus, the 32d Emperor.	188
Valerianus, the 33d Emperor.	189
Gallienus, the 34th Emperor.	190
Claudius II. the 35th Emperor.	192
Quintillus, the 36th Emperor.	193
Aurelianus, the 37th Emperor.	194
Tacitus, the 38th Emperor.	195
Florianus, the 39th Emperor.	196
Probus	

<i>Probus, the 40th Emperor.</i>	Page 196
<i>Carus, the 41st Emperor.</i>	198
<i>Numerianus, the 42d Emperor.</i>	199
<i>Carinus, the 43d Emperor.</i>	200
<i>Dioclesian and Maximian, making together the 44th Emperor.</i>	201
<i>Galerius and Constantius, making together the 45th Emperor.</i>	203
<i>Constantine the Great, the 46th Emperor.</i>	205
<i>The Division of the Empire between the three Sons of Constantine the Great, making together the 47th Emperor.</i>	210
<i>Julian the Apostate, the 48th Emperor.</i>	213
<i>Jovian, the 49th Emperor.</i>	215
<i>Valentinian the Great, the 50th Emperor.</i>	216
<i>Valens, the 51st Emperor.</i>	217
<i>Gratian, the 52d Emperor.</i>	219
<i>Theodosius, the Great, the 53d Emperor.</i>	220
<i>Arcadius, the 54th Emperor.</i>	224
<i>Honorius, the 55th Emperor.</i>	225
<i>Of the Fall and Decay of the Roman Empire.</i>	227
<i>Of the Increase, Purity, and Decay of the Roman Eloquence and Learning.</i>	233
<i>An Abridgment of the principal Customs of the Romans.</i>	238
<i>Of their Months.</i>	ib.
<i>Of their Year, and the Distinction of their Days.</i>	240
<i>Of the Republick.</i>	242
<i>Of the Army.</i>	244
<i>Of the Soldiers.</i>	246
<i>Of the Leaders.</i>	248
<i>After what Manner they ranked their Army for Battle.</i>	251
	Of

Of the Honours paid to the Conquerors.	Page 252
Of the Augurs.	254
Of the Manner of the Roman Apparel.	256
Of their Games.	258
Of their Funerals.	260
Of their Eating.	263
Of their Priests.	264
Of the Roman State.	265
Of their Gladiators.	268
Of the Sibylline Oracles among the Romans.	272
Of their Sacrifices.	272
Of their Marriages.	273
Of several other Roman Antiquities and Customs.	274

F I N I S.

